

# A Translation of the Nepalese Text of the *Suśrutasamhitā*

Jason Birch      Dominik Wujastyk      Andrey Klebanov  
Lisa A. Brooks      Paras Mehta      Madhusudan Rimal  
Deepro Chakraborty      Harshal Bhatt      Jane Allred  
et alii

Draft of 27th October 2023  
© The Authors



# Contents

<b>Sūtrasthāna</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Sūtrasthāna 1: The Origin of Medical Knowledge</b>	<b>9</b>
Literature . . . . .	9
Translation . . . . .	9
<b>Sūtrasthāna 2: The Initiation of a Student</b>	<b>17</b>
Literature . . . . .	17
Translation . . . . .	17
<b>Sūtrasthāna 3: The Table of Contents</b>	<b>19</b>
Literature . . . . .	19
Translation . . . . .	19
<b>Sūtrasthāna 13: On Leeches</b>	<b>21</b>
Literature . . . . .	21
Translation . . . . .	21
<b>Sūtrasthāna 14: On Blood</b>	<b>29</b>
Previous scholarship . . . . .	29
Translation . . . . .	29
<b>Sūtrasthāna 16: Repairing Pierced Ears</b>	<b>37</b>
Previous literature . . . . .	37
Translation . . . . .	37
<b>Sūtrasthāna 28: Unfavourable Prognosis in Patients with Sores</b>	<b>47</b>
Literature . . . . .	47
Translation . . . . .	47

<b>Nidānasthāna</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>Nidānasthāna 1: The Diagnosis of Diseases Caused by Wind</b>	<b>51</b>
Literature . . . . .	51
Translation . . . . .	51
 <b>Śārīrasthāna</b>	 <b>59</b>
<b>Śārīrasthāna 2: On Semen and Menstrual Fluid</b>	<b>61</b>
Literature . . . . .	61
Translation . . . . .	61
 <b>Cikitsāsthāna</b>	 <b>63</b>
<b>Cikitsāsthāna 4: On the Treatment of Wind Diseases</b>	<b>65</b>
Literature . . . . .	65
Translation . . . . .	65
 <b>Cikitsāsthāna 5: On the Treatment of Serious Wind Diseases</b>	 <b>71</b>
Literature . . . . .	71
Translation . . . . .	71
 <b>Cikitsāsthāna 15: On Difficult Delivery</b>	 <b>79</b>
Literature . . . . .	79
Translation . . . . .	79
 <b>Kalpasthāna</b>	 <b>83</b>
<b>Kalpasthāna 1: Protecting the King from Poison</b>	<b>85</b>
Introduction . . . . .	85
Literature . . . . .	86
Manuscript notes . . . . .	86
Translation . . . . .	87
[Threats to the king] . . . . .	87

<b>Kalpasthāna 2: Poisonous Plants</b>	<b>97</b>
Introduction . . . . .	97
Literature . . . . .	98
Translation . . . . .	98
The effects of poisons . . . . .	102
Slow-acting poison . . . . .	105
The invincible ghee . . . . .	110
Curing the ‘slow-acting’ poison . . . . .	110
<b>Kalpasthāna 3: Poisonous Insects and Animals</b>	<b>111</b>
Literature . . . . .	111
Translation . . . . .	111
The origin of poison . . . . .	115
Patients beyond help . . . . .	117
<b>Kalpasthāna 4: Snakes and Invenomation</b>	<b>119</b>
Introduction . . . . .	119
Literature . . . . .	119
Translation . . . . .	121
[Types of snake] . . . . .	124
<b>Uttaratantra</b>	<b>129</b>
<b>Uttaratantra 17: Preventing Diseases of the Pupil</b>	<b>131</b>
Literature . . . . .	131
Translation . . . . .	131
[Complications] . . . . .	140
[Characteristics of the probe] . . . . .	141
[Complications] . . . . .	141
<b>Uttaratantra 38: Diseases of the Female Reproductive System</b>	<b>145</b>
Introduction . . . . .	145
Literature . . . . .	145
Placement of the Chapter . . . . .	145
Parallels . . . . .	147
Philological notes . . . . .	148
Metrical alterations . . . . .	148

---

The original opening verses . . . . .	148
Translation . . . . .	150
<b>Uttaratantra 39: On Fevers and their Management [draft]</b>	<b>143</b>
Literature . . . . .	143
Remarks on the Nepalese version . . . . .	143
Translation . . . . .	143
<b>Uttaratantra 65: Rules of Interpretation</b>	<b>157</b>
Literature . . . . .	157
Terminology . . . . .	157
Characteristics of the Manuscript Transmission . . . . .	157
Translation . . . . .	157
<b>Editions and Abbreviations</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>Index of Manuscripts</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>Materia Medica Reference Works</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>Materia Medica</b>	<b>203</b>
<b>Glossary</b>	<b>213</b>

# **Sūtrasthāna**





# Sūtrasthāna 1: The Origin of Medical Knowledge

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>1</sup>

## Translation

- 1 Now I shall narrate the chapter on the origin of this knowledge.<sup>2</sup>
- 2 Now, as is well-known, Aupadhenava, Vaitaraṇa, Aurabhra, Puṣkalāvata, Karavīra, Gopurarakṣita, Bhoja, Suśruta and others addressed Lord Divodāsa, king of Kāśi, the best of the immortals, who was in his ashram surrounded by an entourage of sages.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> [HIML](#): IA, 203–204.

<sup>2</sup> Ḍalhaṇa understood the word “knowledge (*veda*)” as specifically “medical knowledge.” He said that the word “longevity” (*āyur*) had been elided. After this opening statement, later manuscripts and commentaries include the attribution, “as the venerable Dhanvantari stated.” The absence of this statement in the early Nepalese manuscripts is highly significant because it removes the outer narrative frame of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* (Wujastyk 2013b: 148; Klebanov 2021a: § 3.1.2; Rai 2019; Birch, Wujastyk, Klebanov, Parameswaran, et al. 2021). On the figure of Dhanvatari in medical literature, see [HIML](#): IA 358–361.

<sup>3</sup> On these persons, see [HIML](#): IA 361–363, 369 ff. The authority Bhoja does not appear in the list as published in the vulgate edition ([Su 1931](#): 1), and was not included in [HIML](#) amongst “authorities mentioned in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*.” Meulenbeld gathered textual evidence about Bhoja at [HIML](#): IA 690–691. Klebanov (2021b) has discussed these authors in the context of an anonymous commentary on the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* that cites them.

- 3 “O Lord, distress arose in our minds after witnessing people thrashing about with cries, assailed by different kinds of pain and injury (*vedanābhighāta*), feeling helpless in spite of having friends, because of diseases arising from the body, the mind and external sources.
- 4 “To quell the illnesses of those who seek happiness and for our own purpose of prolonging life, we desire the science of life (*āyurveda*) that is being taught. Welfare, both in this world and in the next, depends upon it. Therefore, we have come to the Lord in pupillage.”
- 5 The Lord said to them:  
“Welcome to you! My children, all of you are beyond reproach and worthy to be taught.
- 6 “As is well known, Ayurveda is the name of what is said to be the subsidiary part of the Atharvaveda. Before creating people, Svayambhū composed it in hundreds of thousands of verses and a thousand chapters and, after observing the short lifespan and low intelligence of people, he presented it again in eight parts.<sup>4</sup>
- 7 “Surgery, treatment of body parts above the clavicle, general medicine, knowledge of spirits, care of children, and the disciplines of antidotes, rejuvenation and aphrodisiacs.
- 8 “Now, a collection of the characteristics of each component of Āyurveda.
- 9 “Among them, [the component] called surgery has the goal of extracting various grasses, wood, stone, dust, iron (?), soil, bone, hair, nails, discharge of pus, malignant wounds and foreign bodies inside the womb, and of determining the application of surgical instruments, knives, caustics and fire by means of sixty definitions.
- 10 “[The component] named the doctrine of treating body parts above the clavicles has the aim of curing diseases situated above clavicles that is, diseases located in ears, eyes, mouth, nose and so on.
- 11 “[The component] called general medicine has the goal of curing illnesses established in the whole body and [diseases] such as fever, tumour, swelling, hemorrhagic disorders, insanity, epilepsy, urinary diseases, diarrhoea and the like.
- 12 “[The component] called knowledge of spirits is for appeasing demons by pacification rites and making food offerings for those whose minds

---

4 Svayambhū is another name for Brahmā, the creator.

- have been possessed by gods, their enemies,<sup>5</sup> Gandharvas, Yakṣas, demons, deceased ancestors, Piśācas, Vināyakas,<sup>6</sup> Nāgas and evil spirits that possess children.
- 13 “[The component] called care of children is for bearing children and purifying defects in a wet-nurse’s milk, and curing diseases that have arisen from bad breast milk and demons.
- 14 “[The component] called the discipline of toxicology is for [knowing] the signs of poison from snake and insect bites and for neutralising various combinations of poisons.<sup>7</sup>
- 15 “[The component] called the discipline of rejuvenation is maintaining youth, bringing about a long life and mental vigour and for curing diseases.
- 16 “[The component] called the discipline of aphrodisiacs brings about the increase, purity, accumulation and production of semen for those whose semen is minimal, bad, depleted, and dry [respectively] and for inducing an erection.
- 17 “Thus, this Āyurveda is taught with eight components.”  
“Among these [components], tell us which is for whom.”
- 18 They said, “After you have conveyed the knowledge of surgery, teach us everything.”
- 19 He said, “So be it.”
- 20 They then said, “Having considered the view of all of us, when we are unanimous, Suśruta will question you. We too will learn what is being taught to him.”
- 21 He said, “So be it.”
- 22 “Now, as is well-known, the aim of Āyurveda is eliminating the disease of one who have been assailed by disease and protecting the healthy; Āyurveda is [that knowledge] in which they find a long life, or that by which long life is known. Learn its best component (i.e., surgery),

5 Dānavas. The insertion marks (*kākapadas*) below the text at this point appears to be by the original scribe.

6 The vulgate doesn’t have *vināyakas* but does add *asuras*, probably under the influence of Ḍaḷhaṇa. Cite Paul Courtright, Ganesha book.

7 The scribal insertion marks (crosses) above the line at this point in MS K appear to be in a later hand and their referent is lost in the damaged part of the folio. Although MSS MS Kathmandu NAK 1-1079 and MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333 include spiders (*lūtā*) and creepy-crawlies (*sarīṣṛpa*) in the list, it does seem that MS K had a shorter list, and the vulgate edition adds rodents (*mūṣika*).

which is being taught in accordance with tradition, perception, inference and analogy.

- 23 "For this component is first, the most important, because it is referred to first; it cures wounds and joins together the most important thing, Yajña's head. For, just as it has been said of old, 'the head that had been cut off by Rudra was joined again by the two Aśvins.'
- 24 "And also, of the eight disciplines of Āyurveda, [surgery] alone is the best because of the quick action of its procedures (*kriyā*), its application of blunt instruments, knives, caustics and fire, and it is common to all disciplines.
- 25 "Therefore, [surgery] is eternal, meritorious, leads to heaven, brings renown, bestows a long life, and affords a livelihood.
- 26 "Brahmā said this, 'Prajāpati learned it. From him, the Aśvins. From the Aśvins, Indra. From Indra, I. In this world, I will transmit to those who desire it for the benefit of people.'
- [There a verse about this].<sup>8</sup>
- 27 *For, I (i.e., Brahmā) am Dhanvantari, the first god, the remover of old age, pain and death of mortals.  
Having understood surgery, the best of the great knowledge systems,  
I arrived on earth again to teach it here.*<sup>9</sup>
- 28 In this context, as far as this discipline is concerned, a human being (*puruṣa*) is called an amalgam of the five elements and the embodied soul. This is where procedures (*kriyā*) apply. This is the locus.

Why?

Because of the duality of the world, the world is twofold: the stationary and the moving. Its nature (*ātmaka*) is twofold, depending on the preponderance of Agni and Soma.<sup>10</sup> Alternatively, it can be considered as being fivefold. The multitude of beings in it are fourfold: they are termed "sweat-born, stone-born, caul-born and egg-born".<sup>11</sup> Where they are concerned, the human being is the main thing; others are his

8 This is an expansion of the scribe's abbreviation *bha* for *bhavati cātra ślokaḥ* "There is a verse about this" (sometimes plural).

9 Note that this verse about the origin of surgery is the first place that the name 'Dhanvantari' is introduced in the Nepalese version of the work. Dhanvantari is here identified with Brahmā, the creator of the world.

10 See Wujastyk 2004.

11 This fourfold classification of beings is paralleled with closely-related vocabulary in *Bhelasamhitā* 4.4.4 (Bhela 2000: 206; Bhela 1921: 81).

support. Therefore, the human being (*puruṣa*) is the locus.

- 29 Diseases are said to be the conjunction of the person and suffering (*duḥkha*). There are four of them: invasive, bodily, mental and inherent. The invasive ones are caused by an injury. The bodily ones are based on food, caused by irregularities (*vaiṣamya*) in wind, bile, phlegm and blood.<sup>12</sup>

The mental (*mānasa*) ones, caused by desire (*icchā*) and hatred (*dveṣa*), include: anger (*krodha*), grief (*āśoka*), misery (*dainya*), overexcitement (*harṣa*), lust (*kāma*), depression (*viṣāda*), envy (*īrṣyā*), jealousy (*asūyā*), malice (*mātsarya*), and greed (*lobha*).

The inherent (*svābhāvika*) ones are hunger, thirst, old age, death, sleep and those of the temperament (*prakṛti*).

These too are located (*adhiṣṭhāna*) in the mind and body.

Scarification (*lekhaṇa*), nourishment (*bṛṇhaṇa*), purification (*saṃśodhana*), pacification (*saṃśamana*), diet (*āhāra*) and regimen (*ācāra*), properly employed, bring about their cure.

- 30 Furthermore, food is the root (*mūla*) of living beings as well as of strength (*bala*), complexion (*varṇa*) and vital energy (*ojas*). It depends on (*āyatta*) the six flavours (*rasa*). Flavours, furthermore, have substances as their substrate (*āśrayin*). And substances are remedies (*oṣadhī*).<sup>13</sup> There are two types: stationary (*sthāvara*) and moving (*jaṅgama*).
- 31 Of these, there are four types of stationary ones: fruit trees (*vanaspati*), flowering trees (*vṛkṣa*), herbs (*oṣadhi*) and shrubs (*vīrudh*).<sup>14</sup> Amongst these, the “fruit trees” have fruit but no flowers.<sup>15</sup> The “flowering trees” have flowers and fruit. The “herbs” die when the fruit is ripe. “Shrubs”

<sup>12</sup> Note that four humoral substances are assumed here.

<sup>13</sup> Pāṇini 6.3.132 provides that the final vowel of the noun *oṣadhi* may be lengthened (→*oṣadhī*) under certain conditions. These conditions require that the word be used in a Vedic mantra and not in the nominative. Neither condition is met in this passage, yet the author uses the form *oṣadhī*. This form is in fact not uncommon in medical literature as well as in epics, purāṇas, smṛtis, and other parts of Sanskrit literature.

<sup>14</sup> Ca.sū.1.71–72 also describes these four types of medicinal plant in similar terms but with slightly differing names: *oṣadhi* is a plant that ends after fruiting, *vīrudh* is a plant that branches out, *vanaspati* is a tree with fruit, and *vānaspatya* is a tree with fruit and flowers.

<sup>15</sup> The MSS agree in reading *phalavantyaḥ* “having flowers” which is grammatically non-standard. This form is also found in the *Viṣṇudharmottarapurāṇa* (1.92.27, 1.92.27 *Viṣṇudh.*: 56r).

put out shoots.

- 32 As is well known, moving remedies are also of four types: those born in in a caul (*jarāyuja*), those born from eggs (*aṇḍaja*), those born of sweat (*sveda*), and shoots (*udbhid*). Amongst these, those born in a caul include animals (*paśu*), humans, and wild animals (*vyāla*). Birds, creepy-crawlies (*sarīṣṛpa*) and snakes are “born of eggs.” Worms (*kṛmi*), small insects (*kunta*) and ants (*pipīlika*) and others are born of sweat.<sup>16</sup> Shoots include red velvet mites (*indragopa*) and frogs (*maṇḍūka*).<sup>17</sup>
- 33 In this context, among the stationary remedies, skin (*tvak*), leaves (*patra*), flowers (*puṣpa*), fruits (*phala*), roots (*mūla*), bulbs (*kanda*), sap (*kṣīra*), resin (*niryāsa*), essence (*sāra*), oil (*sneha*), and juice extract (*svarasa*)<sup>18</sup> are useful; among the moving remedies pelt (*carman*), hair, nails, and blood (*rudhira*) and so forth.
- 34 And earth products (*pārthiva*) include gold and silver.<sup>19</sup>
- 35 The items created by time (*kālakṛta*) are clusters (*samplava*) as far as wind and no wind (*nivāta*), heat and shade, darkness and light and the cold, hot and rainy seasons (*varṣā*) are concerned. The divisions of time are the blink of the eye (*nimeṣa*), a trice (*kāṣṭhā*), minutes (*kalā*), three-quarters of an hour (*muḥūrta*), a day and night (*ahorātra*), a fortnight (*pakṣa*), a month (*māsa*), a season (*ṛtu*), a half-year (*ayana*), a year (*saṃvatsara*), and yuga (*yuga*).<sup>20</sup>
- 36 These naturally cause accumulation (*sañcaya*), irritation (*prakopa*), pacification (*upaśama*) and alleviation (*pratīkāra*) of the humours (*doṣa*). And they have practical purposes (*prayojanavat*).

[There are verses about this:]<sup>21</sup>

- 37 This fourfold category is taught by physicians as a cause for the agitation and quelling of bodily diseases.<sup>22</sup>

16 The word *kunta*, though marked as “lexical” in most dictionaries, is in fact found in literature, commonly as a compound with *pipīlika*; the compound sometimes seems to be understood a type of ant (*tatpuruṣa* compound) rather than as a pair of insects (*dvandva* compound).

17 On *indragopa*, see Lienhard 1978.

18 On juice extract (*svarasa*) see CS 1.1.73, 1.4.7; Ḍalhaṇa on 4.10.12 (Su 1938: 450).

19 The flow of concepts in the treatise seems to be interrupted here.

20 These units are presented at 1.6.5 (Su 1938: 24) and discussed by Hayashi (2017: § 59).

21 See footnote 8.

22 On the topic of the “group of four,” the commentator Ḍalhaṇa considers them to be “food, behaviour, earthen products and items created by time.” He refers to

- 38      *There are two kinds of invasive diseases. Some certainly<sup>23</sup> affect (ni√ pat) the mind, others the body. Their treatment (kriyā) is of two kinds too.*
- 39      *For those that affect the body there is physical (śārīravād) therapy, whereas for those that affect the mind there is the collection (varga) of desirable sensory experiences like sound that bring comfort (sukha ).*
- 40      *Along these lines (evam), this brief explanation of the four factors (catuṣṭaya) is given:*
- human being (*puruṣa*),
  - disease (*vyādhi*),
  - remedies (*oṣadhi*),
  - the time for therapies (*kriyākāla*).

In this context,

- from the mention of the word “human,” the collection of substances that arise from it, such as the elements, and the particulars (*vikalpa*) of its major and minor parts (*aṅga*) such as skin (*tvak*), flesh (*māṃsa*), ducts (*sirā*), sinews (*snāyu*), bones (*asthi*) and joints (*sandhi*) are meant.
- From the mention of “diseases,” all diseases caused by wind, bile, phlegm, congested humours (*sannipāta*), external factors (*āgantū*) and inherent factors (*svabhāva*) are intended (*vyākhyāta*).
- From the mention of “remedies,” there is the teaching of substances, tastes, potencies, post-digestive tastes.
- From the mention of “procedures (*kriyā*),” therapies (*karman*) such as oiling and excision (*chedya*) are taught.
- From the mention of the word “time,” every single teaching about the times for procedures is meant.

[There is a verse about this:]<sup>24</sup>

---

the author of the lost commentary entitled *Pañjikā*, and to Jejjāta (HIML: IA, 372–3, 192). In his view, these early commentators do not agree that the fourfold grouping (*caturvarga*) refers to the quartet of stationary (*sthāvara*), moving (*jaṅgama*), earthen products (*pārthiva*) and items created by time (*kālakṛta*) (Su 1938: 9a).

23 The text uses an archaic interjection here, *ha*.

24 See footnote 8.

- 41        *This seed of medicine has been declared in brief. Its explanation will  
be given in one hundred and twenty chapters.*<sup>25</sup>
- 42    There are one hundred and twenty chapters in five sections (*adhyāya*).<sup>26</sup>  
In that regard, having divided them, according to their subject matter,  
into the Ślokaśthāna, the Nidāna, the Śārīra, the Cikitsita and the Kalpa,  
we shall mention this in the Uttaratantra.<sup>27</sup>
- [There is a verse about this:]<sup>28</sup>
- 43        *Someone who reads this eternal proclamation of the King of Kāśī,  
that was declared by Svayambhu, will have good karma on earth,  
will be respected by kings and upon death will achieve the world of  
Śakra.*

25 This is the number of chapters in the first five sections of the work, namely the *Sūtra*-, *Nidāna*-, *Śārīra*-, *Cikitsā*- and *Kalpa-sthānas*. These have 46, 16, 10, 40 and 8 chapters respectively. The *Uttaratantra* has 66 chapters.

26 On *viṃśa* in the sense of “greater by 20” see P.5.2.46 *śadantaviṃśateś ca*.

27 The end of this sentence reads oddly. The vulgate edition adds an object: “[we shall mention] the remaining topics [in the Uttara]” which smooths out the difficulty, but this is supported in none of the Nepalese MSS. At the start of the *Uttaratantra* (*Su* 1938: 1.3–4ab) there is indeed a statement that picks up the point about there being 120 chapters.

28 See footnote 8.



# Sūtrasthāna 2: The Initiation of a Student

## Literature

[HIML](#): IA, 204; Preisendanz [2007](#); Wujastyk [2012](#): 82–83, *et passim*.

## Translation



# **Sūtrasthāna 3: The Table of Contents**

**Literature**

**Translation**



# Sūtrasthāna 13: On Leeches

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of studies on Indian leeches and their application.<sup>29</sup>

A Persian version of this chapter of the *Suśrutasamhitā* was included in *Sikandar Shāh's Mine of Medicine* (*Ma'din al-shifā' i Sikandar-Shāhī*) composed in 1512 by Miyān Bhūwah b. *Khawāṣṣ Khān*.<sup>30</sup>

More recently, Brooks has explored the sense of touch in relation to leeching and patient-physician interactions.<sup>31</sup>

## Translation

- 1 And now we shall explain **the chapter** about leeches.
- 3 The leech is for the benefit of kings, rich people, delicate people, children, the elderly, fearful people and women. It is said to be the most gentle means for letting blood.
- 4 In that context, one should let blood that is corrupted by wind, bile or phlegm with a horn, a leech, or a **gourd**, respectively. Or, each kind can be made to flow by any of them in their particular way.<sup>32</sup>

---

<sup>29</sup> *HIML*: IA, 209; IB, 324, n. 131.

<sup>30</sup> Siddiqi 1959: 96–109; Azeez Pasha 1971; Storey 1971: 231–232; *HIML*: IB, 324, n. 128; Speziale 2019: 8–9.

<sup>31</sup> Brooks 2020a,b; 2021a,b.

<sup>32</sup> This sentence is hard to construe grammatically, although its meaning seems clear. In place of विशेषस्तु, Cakrapāṇidatta and Ḍalhaṇa both read विशेषतस्, which helps interpretation (*Su* 1939: 95, *Su* 1938: 55). It is noteworthy that the critical syllable स्तु is smudged or corrected in both MS Kathmandu NAK 1-1079 and in 1-1146, a much later Devanāgarī manuscript.

- 5x And there are the following about this:
- 1.13.5 The horn of cows is praised for being unctuous, **smooth**, and very sweet. Therefore, when wind is troubled, that is good for bloodletting.<sup>33</sup>
- 1.13.5a Having a length of seven fingers and a large body the shape of a half moon, should first be placed into a cut. A strong person should suck with the mouth.<sup>34</sup>
- 6 A leech lives in the cold, is sweet and is born in the water. So when someone is afflicted by bile, they are suitable for bloodletting.<sup>35</sup>
- 7 A **gourd** is well known for being pungent, dry and sharp. So when someone is afflicted by phlegm it is suitable for bloodletting.
- 8 In that context, at the scarified location one should let blood using a horn wrapped in a covering of a thin bladder, or with a **gourd** with a flame inside it because of the suction.<sup>36</sup>
- 9 Leeches are called “*jala-ayu-ka*” because water (*jala*) is their life (*āyur*).<sup>37</sup> “Home” (*okas*) means “dwelling;” their home is water, so they are called “water-dwellers (*jalaaukas*).”
- 10 There are twelve of them: six are venomous and just the same number are non-venomous.

---

There is an insertion in the text, printed in parentheses in the vulgate at 1.13.4 (Su 1938: 55) as विशेषतस्तु विस्राव्यं शृङ्गजलौकालाबुभिर्गृहीयात्. This insertion is not included in the earlier edition of the vulgate, but is replaced by स्निग्धशीतरूक्षत्वात् (Su 1931: 54). Dalhaṇa noted that, “this reading is discussed to some extent by some compilers (निबन्धकार), but it is definitely rejected by most of them, including Jejjhaṭa.”

- 33 The vulgate replaced “smooth” with “hot.”
- 34 This passage is not found in the vulgate, but it is similar to the passage cited by Dalhaṇa at 1.13.8 (Su 1938: 56) and attributed to Bhāluki. Bhāluki was the author of a *Bhālukitantra* that may have predated Jejjhaṭa and might even have been one of the sources for the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* (HIML: IA, 689–690 *et passim*). The editor Ācārya was aware of this reading in the Nepalese manuscripts; see his note 4 on 1.13.5 (Su 1938: 55, note 4).
- 35 Note that the particular qualities (*guṇas*) of the leech in this and the following verses counteract the quality of the affliction. See Brooks 2018: 113, table 1.
- 36 There are questions about the wrapping or covering of the horn. Other versions of the text, and the commentator, propose that there may be two coverings, or that cloth may be a constituent. Comparison with contemporary horn-bloodletting practice by traditional Sudanese healers suggests that a covering over the top hole in the horn is desirable when sucking, to prevent the patient’s blood entering the mouth (PBS 2020). Our understanding of this verse is that the bladder material is used to cover the mouthpiece and then to block it, in order to preserve suction in the horn for a few minutes while the blood is let.
- 37 This is a folk etymology.

11 Here is an explanation of the venomous ones, together with the therapy:

- Black (*kṛṣṇā*)
- Mottled (*karburā*)
- Sting-gush (*alagarddā*)<sup>38</sup>
- Rainbow (*indrāyudhā*)
- Oceanic (*sāmudrikā*)
- **Cow-praising** (*govandanā*)<sup>39</sup>

Amongst these,

- The one called a Black is the colour of kohl and has a broad head;
- The one called Mottled is like the [Indian mottled eel](#), long with a segmented (*chinna*), humped belly.
- The one called Sting-gush is hairy, has large sides and a black mouth.
- The one called Rainbow is coloured like a rainbow, with vertical stripes.
- The one called Oceanic is slightly blackish-yellow, and is covered with variegated flower patterns.
- The one called Govandana is like a cow's testicles, having a bifurcated form on the lower side, and a tiny mouth.

When someone is bitten by them, the symptoms are: a swelling at the site of the bite, excessive itching and fainting, fever, a temperature, and vomiting. In that context the Great Antidote (*mahāgada*) should be applied in drinks and liniments (*ālepana*), etc.<sup>40</sup> A bite by the Rainbow leech is not treatable. These venomous ones have been explained together with their remedies.

12 Now the ones without venom.<sup>41</sup>

- Tawny (*kapilā*)
- Ruddy (*piṅgalā*)

38 Treating गर्दा as गल्दा and translating as in RV 8.1.20, with Jamison and Brereton (2014: 1023, verse 20 and cf. commentary). But if गर्द is to be taken from √गर्द् then we might have “crying from the sting.”

39 The manuscripts all read गोवन्दना against the vulgate's गोचन्दना.

40 The “Great Antidote” is described in the Kalpasthāna, at 5.5.61–63ab (Su 1938: 578). Ḍalhaṇa and the vulgate included errhines in the list of therapies, and Ḍalhaṇa added that “etc.” indicated showers and baths too.

41 The translations of the names of these leeches are slightly whimsical, but give a sense of the original; *sāvarikā* remains etymologically puzzling.

- Dart-mouth (*śaṅkumukhī* )
- Mouse (*mūṣikā* )
- Lotus-mouth (*puṇḍarikamukhī*)
- Sāvarikā (*sāvarikā* )

Amongst these,

- The one called Tawny has sides that look as if they are dyed with realgar and is the colour of glossy mung beans on the back.<sup>42</sup>
- The one called Ruddy is a bit red, has a round body, is yellowish, and moves fast.
- The one called Dart-mouth is the colour of liver, drinks fast and has a long mouth.
- The one called Mouse is the colour and shape of a mouse and has an undesirable smell.
- The one called Lotus is the colour of mung beans and has a mouth that looks like a lotus.
- The one called Sāvarikā has the colour of a lotus leaf and is eighteen centimetres long. But that one is used when the purpose is an animal.

The non-venomous ones have been explained.

- 13 Their lands are Yavana, Pāṇḍya, Sahya, Potana and so on.<sup>43</sup> Those in

42 The compound सिग्धमुद्गवर्णा is supported by all the manuscript witnesses and is translated here. Nevertheless, the reading of the vulgate, that separates सिग्धा, f., “slimy” as an adjective for the leech, seems more plausible: “it is slimy and the colour of a mung bean.”

43 This passage is discussed by Karttunen (2015: 109–110, 388–389). At the time of the composition of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, Yavana would most likely have referred the Hellenistic Greek diaspora communities in Bactria and India (Law 1984: 136–137; Mairs 2013; 2014). Unproblematically, the Pāṇḍya country is the extreme south-eastern tip of the Indian subcontinent (Schwartzberg, Bajpai, et al. 1978: E8, p. 20 *et passim*), and Sahya refers to the Western Ghats (Schwartzberg, Bajpai, et al. 1978: D5–7, p. 20 *et passim*). The vulgate reading “Pautana” is not a known toponym. Potana was the ancient capital of the Aśmaka Mahājanapada mentioned in Pali sources and in inscriptions at Ajāntā and elsewhere, and identified by Law (1984: 142, 179) and P. Gupta (1989: 18) with Pratiṣṭhāna, modern Paithan on the Godavari river. The recurring ancient epithet describing the Aśmaka kingdom is that it was on the Godāvarī, and Paithan is flanked to the south west and south east by this river.

Some scholars have identified the name with modern Bodhan in Telangana (Sircar 1971: 189; Schwartzberg, Bajpai, et al. 1978: E6, p. 14, 140 *et passim*; Sen 1988: 102), but this implausible identification is traceable to a speculative suggestion by



particular have large bodies and are strong, they drink rapidly, consume a lot, and are without venom.

- 14 In that context, the venomous leeches are those originating in decomposing venomous insects, frogs, urine, feces and in polluted water.<sup>44</sup> The , non-venomous ones originate in decomposing [sacred lotus](#), [blue water-lily](#), [white water-lily](#), [fragrant lotus](#), [pondweed](#) and in pure waters.

- 15 There is a verse on this:

*These ones move about in sweet-smelling habitats that are abundant with water. Traditionally, they do not behave in a confused manner or lie in the mud.*<sup>45</sup>

- 16 They can be caught with a fresh hide or after being caught in other ways.<sup>46</sup>
- 17 Then these should be put into a large new pot furnished with mud and the water from lakes or wells. One should provide what they need to eat. One should grind up [pondweed](#), [dried meat](#), and aquatic tubers, and one should give them grass and aquatic leaves to lie on, and every

---

Raychaudhuri (1953: 89, n. 5, 143) based on a variant form “Podana” found in some early manuscripts of the *Mahābhārata*: “This name reminds one of Bodhan in the Nizam’s dominions,” “possibly to be identified with Bodhan.”

Ḍalhaṇa on 1.13.13 (Su 1938: 57) anachronistically identified “Yavana” as the land of the Turks (तुरुष्क) and “Pautana” as the Mathurā region. He also noted, as did Cakrapānidatta (Su 1939: 97), that this passage was not included by some authorities on the grounds that the habitats of poisonous and non-poisonous creatures are defined by other criteria.

- 44 The vulgate on 4.13.14 (Su 1938: 57) includes fish in this list.

- 45 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.13.14 (Su 1938: 57) discussed why the leeches would not “behave in a confused manner” (सङ्कीर्णचारिन्), saying that they do not “eat a diet that is unwholesome because of poison etc.” (विषादिविरुद्धाहारभुजः). The use of विरुद्ध is odd here, but cf. Ḍalhaṇa’s suggestion at 4.23.4 (Su 1938: 485) that विरुद्ध refers to the chapter on wholesome and unwholesome foods (हिताहिताध्याय, 1.20 (Su 1938: 94–99)).

- 46 “Fresh hide” (आर्द्रचर्मन्) may suggest that the animal skin still includes meat or blood that is attractive to a leech.

The Nepalese witnesses all read गृहीत्वा “having (been) caught” for the vulgate’s गृहीयात् “one may grasp (by other means).” This is hard to construe clearly.

Ḍalhaṇa on 1.13.15 (Su 1938: 57) quoted “another treatise” (तन्त्रान्तरवचनात्) that said that autumn is the time to collect leeches. He also explained that “other methods” of collecting leeches included smearing a leg or other limb with cream, butter or milk, etc., or using a piece of flesh from a freshly killed animal.

three days water and food. Every week, one should transfer them into a different pot.

18 And on this:

*One should not **nurture** those that are thick in the middle, that are injured,<sup>47</sup> or **thin**, those that are not born in the proper habitat, those that will not attach, that drink little or those that are venomous.*

- 19 First of all, get the patient who has an ailment that is treatable by leech-bloodletting to sit or lie down. Then, dry **any diseased opening** with powders of earth and cow-dung. Then make them free from impurities, with their bodies smeared with **Indian mustard** and **turmeric** and moving about in the middle of a cup of water. After all this, the physician should make them attach to the site of the ailment. Now, for those that are not attaching, he should provide a drop of milk or a drop of blood. Alternatively, one should make some marks with a knife (*śas-trapada*).<sup>48</sup> And if it still will not attach, make other ones attach.
- 20 He can know that it is attached when it fixes on, hunching its neck and making a mouth like a horse's hoof. Then, he should cover it with a wet cloth and keep it there.
- 21 Now, if the physician knows, from the arising of pricking and itching at the bite, that clean blood is being taken, he should take it off. Then, if it does not release because of the scent of blood one should sprinkle its mouth with powdered **rock salt**.
- 22 Then he should coat it with **rice-grain chaff**, rub its mouth with sesame oil and salt and cause it to vomit by holding its tail in his left hand and very slowly rubbing it with the thumb and finger of his right hand in the proper direction, as far as the mouth, until it is properly purged.<sup>49</sup> A properly purged leech placed in a goblet of water moves about, wanting to eat. If it sinks down, not moving, it is badly purged; one should make it vomit once again.
- A badly purged leech develops an incurable disease called Indrapada.<sup>50</sup>

47 Pace Ḍalhaṇa on 1.13.18 (Su 1938: 57) who glossed अमनोज्ञदर्शन as “nasty looking.”

48 On पद as a “mark,” “imprint,” or “place of application,” cf. 4.1.29 (Su 1938: 399), 5.4.15 (Su 1938: 571), etc. See footnote 392.

49 The expression शालितण्डुलकाण्डन, “rice-grain chaff” could be read as “**unhusked rice**, **rice grains** and **chaff**” but this seems unlikely in the context.

50 The Nepalese witnesses read इन्द्रपद/इन्द्रापद, but the vulgate reads इन्द्रमद, a term that is found in other texts such as the *Mānasollāsa* 6.641 (vol. 1, 87), where it is a fever

One that protects its deflated head with its body, suddenly curls up and makes the water warm is traditionally said to have Indrapada.

Thus, one should keep such a one as before.<sup>51</sup>

- 23 After observing the proper or improper flow of the blood, one should rub the opening made by the leech with honey.<sup>52</sup> Alternatively, one may bind it up and smear it with ointments that are astringent, sweet, oily and cold.

- 24 And about this there is the following:

*When the leeches have just drunk, one should pour ghee on it. And one should pour on to the blood things that are capable of stopping the blood.*

- 25 *Someone who knows habitats, the capture, feeding and bloodletting of leeches is worthy to treat a king.*

---

affecting fish, and the *Garuḍapurāṇa* 1.147.3 (tr. A Board of Scholars 1957: 2, 425) where it is fever affecting clouds; see further Brooks [forthcoming](#).

51 The vulgate includes “well purged” as the object in this sentence, which makes better sense.

52 In the Nepalese witnesses, the object of this passage is जलौकामुखम् “the mouth of the leech,” that we have interpreted, perhaps freely, as “opening made by the leech.” Logically and as transmitted in the vulgate, this passage should be about managing the wound on the patient that has been made by the leech.



# Sūtrasthāna 14: On Blood

## Previous scholarship

Meulenbeld offered both an annotated summary of this chapter as well as a study specifically on the place of blood in Ayurvedic theory.<sup>53</sup>

## Translation

- 1 Now we shall declare the chapter about blood.
- 2
- 3 Food is of four types.<sup>54</sup> It is endowed with six tastes and is made of the five elements.<sup>55</sup> It has either two or eight potencies, and is endowed with many qualities. <sup>56</sup> Chyle (रस) is the most intangible essence of this food that is properly transformed. It is of the nature of fire.  
Chyle is situated in the heart. From the heart, it enters into the twenty-four arteries—ten upward arteries, ten downward, and four sideways—and doing so day after day owing to the reaction of past

---

53 [HIML](#): IA, 209–201 and Meulenbeld 1991. Meulenbeld’s footnotes on this chapter in [HIML](#): IB, 325 ff. refer often to “Hoernle’s note.” This appears to be a reference to Hoernle’s copious notes to his translation of this chapter (Hoernle 1897: 87–98). Meulenbeld (1990) discussed Sanskrit veterinary texts in the light of their standard theory of four humours, including blood.

54 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.14.3 ([Su 1938](#): 59) said that the four types of food are those that can be drunk, licked, eaten and chewed (पेयलेह्यभोज्यभक्ष्य). The main text of the *Carakasamhitā* is explicit about these categories, 4.3.4(1) ([Ca 1941](#): 308): पानाशनभक्ष्यलेह्य । “things drunk, eaten, chewed or licked.” On the distinction of भक्ष्य/भोज्य, see Yagi 1994; for further background on foods, see Olivelle 2001.

55 *Idem*, Earth, water, fire, air, space

56 Ḍalhaṇa related these qualities to the twenty standard गुण of āyurveda; see, e.g., their listing by Vāgbhaṭa, translated by Wujastyk (2003b: 207).

activities that are caused by the invisible,<sup>57</sup> it satisfies the entire body, enlivens it, prolongs it,<sup>58</sup> and makes it grow. The motion of the entity that flows throughout the body should be understood by inference. That motion causes deterioration and growth.

With regards to the chyle that flows through all the limbs, humours, body tissues, and impurities of the body, the question arises, “Is it moist or is it fiery?” It is understood to be moist because of its fluidity while flowing<sup>59</sup> and due to attributes such as mobility, lubrication, enlivening, satisfaction, and supporting.<sup>60</sup>

- 4 That watery chyle is then reddened after reaching the liver and spleen.
- 5 There are verses about this.

*Experts know that blood is the untransformed fluid that is reddened by the pure fire element within the bodies of living beings.*

- 6 *It is only due to chyle that women’s blood called menses exists. It increases from the twelfth year and decreases after the fiftieth year.*
- 7 The menstrual blood, however, is called fiery.<sup>61</sup> That is due to the embryo being fiery and moist.<sup>62</sup>
- 8 Others state that the embryo as constituted of the five elements and the preceptors call it the living blood.
- 9 There are verses about this.

*That is because blood exhibits the qualities of earth, etc. such as a fleshy smell, fluidity, redness, pulsation and thinness.*

57 अदृष्ट (unseen): Doing any righteous or unrighteous action produces good merit and demerit respectively. This good merit and demerit are called अदृष्ट (invisible) because it cannot be directly known but can only be assumed through logical deduction.

58 In the sense of prolonging its lifespan

59 The vulgate emends अनुसरणे to अनुसरण- against the Nepalese MSS. This is logical because mobility would seem to be one of the attributes. Although it is awkward, we read अनुसरणे as a locative absolute “while flowing.”

60 The duality being discussed here is that of the essential qualities of Fire and of Soma (agni and soma). See further discussion by Wujastyk (2004) and Angermeier (2021).

61 Ḍalhaṇa commented that this is to distinguish the menstrual blood from regular blood that is gentle.

62 Ḍalhaṇa commented here that the embryo is called such because the menstrual blood is fiery and the semen is gentle (सौम्य). On the fiery/moist distinction (आग्नेय/सौम्य), see Wujastyk 2004; Angermeier 2021.

- 10 *Blood is formed from chyle, flesh from blood, lymph from flesh, bone from lymph, marrow from bone, semen from marrow, and progeny from semen.*
- 11 There, the essence (chyle) of food and drink is the nourisher of these body tissues.
- 12 There is a verse about this.
- A living being should be known as born from chyle. One should diligently preserve<sup>63</sup> chyle by administering food and drink, being nicely disciplined with food<sup>64</sup>.*
- 13 The verbal root *rasa* means movement.<sup>65</sup> Because it keeps moving day after day, it is called *rasa* (chyle).<sup>66</sup>
- 14 Chyle stays in every body tissue for 2548 ((25\*100)+48) *kalās* and nine *kāṣṭhas*. As such, it becomes semen after a month. For women, it becomes menses.
- 15 Here are verses about this.
- According to similar and dissimilar treatises, the quantity of kalās in this group<sup>67</sup> is 18,090.*
- This is the particular transformation period regarding chyle that lasts for a person with mild fire<sup>68</sup>. For a person with developed fire, one should know it to last for the exact same time<sup>69</sup>*
- 16 Resembling the expanse of sound, flame, and water, that entity moves along in a minute manner throughout the entire body<sup>70</sup>.

63 All three manuscripts have रक्षेत् which is an incorrect form. रक्षेत् is the correct form.

64 आहारेण - The third case is used. The semantic property of the third case used here is unclear. Unclear regarding if there is any rule in the *Aṣṭādhyāyī* justifying this usage.

65 kunj-1907

66 In the list of verbal roots of Pāṇini, the verbal root रस(*rasa*) means taste and moistening. It does not mean movement.

67 duration of chyle in all the body tissues as a whole

68 Perhaps this refers to the digestive fire.

69 Although the vulgate does not have this verse, there is an argument presented in Ḍalhaṇa's commentary on 1.14.16 (Su 1938: 63) that for a person with intense fire, chyle becomes semen after eight days, and for a person with mild fire, chyle becomes semen after a month. Ḍalhaṇa said that this opinion is refuted by Gayadāsa Ācārya in many different ways. Ḍalhaṇa continued that the proper understanding is that for a person with a strong fire, chyle becomes blood in a little less than a month, and for a person with a mild fire, chyle becomes blood in a little more than a month.

70 Ḍalhaṇa comments (Su 1938: 63) that the expanse of sound indicates the sideways

- 17 The aphrodisiac medicines, however, being used like a purgative due to their excessively strong characteristics, evacuate the semen.
- 18 Just as it cannot be said that the fragrance in a flower bud is present in it or not, but accepting that there is the manifestation of existing entities<sup>71</sup>, it,<sup>72</sup> however, is not experienced only due to its intangibility. That same entity is experienced at another time in the blossomed flower. In the same way regarding children also, the manifestation of semen happens because of the advancement of age<sup>73</sup>. For women, the manifestation is different as rows of hair, menses, etc.
- 19 That very essence of food does not nourish very old people due to their decaying bodies.
- 20 These entities are called body tissues (*dhātu-s*) because they bear the body<sup>74</sup>.
- 21 Their decay and growth are due to blood. Therefore, I will speak about blood. In that regard: The blood that is foamy, tawny, black, rough, thin, quick-moving, and non-coagulating is vitiated by air. The blood that is dark green, yellow, green, brown, sour-smelling, and unpleasant to ants and flies is vitiated by bile. The blood that is orange, unctuous, cool, dense, slimy, flowing, and resembling the colour of flesh-muscles is vitiated by phlegm. The blood having all these characteristics is vitiated by the combination of all three of them. The blood that is extremely black is vitiated by blood<sup>75</sup> just as bile. The blood that has the combined characteristics of vitiations of two humours is vitiated by two humours.
- 22 The blood that is of the colour of insect cochineal, not thick, and not discoloured should be understood to be in its natural state.
- 23 I will speak of the types of blood that should be let out in another sec-

---

movement of chyle, the expanse of flame indicates the upward movement of chyle, and the expanse of water indicates the downward movement of chyle.

71 This is the doctrine of pre-existence of the effect (सत्कार्यवाद, *satkāryavāda*) first propounded by Sāṅkhya philosophers.

72 fragrance

73 Since chyle becomes semen in a month's time, a question arises "Why then is semen absent in young children?". The reply is given in this passage.

74 The etymological meaning of the Sanskrit word धातु (*dhātu*) is "that which bears [the body]". Thus, the body tissues are called *dhātu-s* because they bear the body. This means that the body tissues are the elements that make up the body and sustain it.

75 Y. T. Ācārya and N. R. Ācārya (*Su* 1938: 64) quote Cakrapāṇidatta in a footnote: "This is the symptom when the blood vitiated in one part of the body vitiates the blood in another part."



tion.

24 Now, I speak of those that should not be let out. The swelling appearing in all the limbs of the body of a weak person that happens due to consuming sour food. The swellings of people with jaundice, piles, large abdomen, emaciation, and those of pregnant women.

26 In that regard, one should quickly insert the surgical instrument that is simple, not very close, fine, uniform, not deep, and not shallow.

26a One should not insert the instrument into the heart, lower belly, anus, navel, waist, groins, eyes, forehead, palms, and soles.

26b In the case of swellings filled with pus, one should treat them in the same way as stated earlier.

27-27a There, when the swelling is not pierced properly, when phlegm and air have not been sweated out, after having a meal, and due to thickness, the blood does not ooze out or oozes out less. Here is a verse regarding it.

28ab-cd *Blood does not ooze out of humans when in contact with air, passing stool or urine, and when intoxicated, unconscious, fatigued, sleeping, or in cold surroundings.*

29 That vitiated blood when not taken out increases the disease.

30 The blood that is let by an ignorant physician in cases of very hot surroundings, profuse perspiration, and excessive piercing, flows excessively. That profuse bleeding causes the appearance of acute headache, blindness, and partial blindness, or it quickly causes subsequent wasting, convulsions, tremors, hemiplegia, paralysis in a limb, hiccups, coughing, panting, jaundice, or death.

31ab-cd The physician should let out the blood when the weather is not very hot or cold, when the patient is not perspiring or heated up, and after the patient has had a sufficient intake of gruel.

32ab-cd After coming out properly, when the blood stops automatically, one should know that blood to be pure and drained properly.

33ab-cd The symptoms of the proper drainage of blood are the experience of lightness, alleviation of pain, a complete end of the intensity of the disease, and satisfaction of the mind.

34ab-cd Defects of the skin, tumours, swellings, and all diseases caused by blood never arise for those who regularly drain their blood.

35 When the blood does not flow out, the physician should rub cardamom and camphor on the opening of the boil with three or four or all among crêpe ginger (*Cheilocostus speciosus*), butterfly gardenia (*Ervatamia*

coronaria Stapf), velvet-leaf, deodar, embelia, leadwort, the three spices (black pepper, long pepper, and dry ginger), āgāradhūma, turmeric, sprouts of purple calotropis, and fruit of the Indian beech, according to availability, with excessive salt. By doing so, the blood flows out properly.

- 36 When there is an excessive flow of blood, the physician should sprinkle the opening of the boil with dry powders of lodh tree, liquorice, beautyberry, pattāṅga, red chalk, elixir salve, seashell, barley, green gram, wheat, and resin of the Sāla tree, and then press it with the tip of a finger. One should tightly bind it with powdered barks of Sāla, white dammer tree, arjun, white babool, granthi, axlewood, and dhanvāna (Camelthorn), or a linen cloth<sup>76</sup>, or vadyāsita, or bone of cuttlefish, or powdered lac, along with the binding materials mentioned. After the piercing, the physician should pierce it again. The physician should serve cool clothing, food, a dwelling place, a bath, cooling ointments, and plastering. Or, one can cauterize it with heat. Or, as mentioned, one should give a decoction of kākolī, etc. sweetened by sugar and honey to drink. Or, one should consume the blood of black buck, deer, ram, buffalo, rabbit, or pig, accompanied by milk, green gram soup and meat soup<sup>77</sup>. The physician should treat the pains as mentioned.

36a Here are verses about this.

- 37ab-cd *When blood flows out due to the decay of body tissue, fire becomes weak<sup>78</sup> and the wind becomes highly agitated because of that endeavour.*
- 38ab-cd *The physician should serve the patient food that is not very cold, light in digestion, unctuous, increases blood, slightly sour or not sour at all.*
- 39ab-cd *This is the four-fold method of hindering blood: joining, coagulation, haemostasis. and cauterization.*
- 40ab-cd *The astringent substance joins the opening, the cold substance coagulates the blood, the ash stops the blood, and cauterization contracts the blood vessel.*
- 41ab-cd *If the blood does not coagulate, the physician should employ joining.*

76 Su 1938: 66 has क्षौमेण वा ध्यापितेन - "with linen reduced to ashes". Presumably, it is this ash that is also referred to in item 40.

77 Based on Ḍalhaṇa's comment as found in Su 1938: 66

78 This refers to the digestive fire.

- If the blood does not stop by joining the opening then he should employ haemostasis.*
- 42ab-cd *The physician should endeavour by employing these three methods according to the procedure. If these methods are unsuccessful then cauterization is highly desirable.*
- 43ab-cd *If the blood remains impure, the disease does not aggravate. The physician should then make the blood pure<sup>79</sup> and not drain blood in excess.*
- 44ab-cd *Blood is the basis of the body. It is sustained by blood only.*
- 44ef *Blood is called life. One should therefore save blood.*
- 45ab-cd *If the air in the person who underwent blood-letting is aggravated due to a cold shower, etc., the swelling with pricking pain should be sprinkled with lukewarm clarified butter.*

Can't be  
"sedation"

<sup>79</sup> Dalhaṇa comments (Su 1938: 66) that one should purify the blood again by sedation, etc.



# Sūtrasthāna 16: Repairing Pierced Ears

## Previous literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>80</sup> A book on this topic, arising out of the present project, with edition, translation and discussion of the Nepalese transmission is published by Wujastyk, Birch, Klebanov, et al. 2023.

## Translation

1 Now we shall expound the method for piercing the ear.<sup>81</sup>

---

<sup>80</sup> [HIML](#): IA, 211–212317.

<sup>81</sup> The topic of piercing the ear (कर्णव्यध) is not discussed in the *Carakasamhitā* ([HIML](#): IB, 326, n. 175), but it is mentioned in some texts that followed the *Suśrutasamhitā*, such as the *Kaśāpyasamhitā* ([HIML](#): IIA, 30). Also, the instrument for piercing the ear is described in the *Aṣṭāṅgahṛdayasamhitā* 1.26.26 ([Ah 1939](#): 321). In the versions of the text known to Ḍalhaṇa ([Su 1938](#): 76) and Cakrapāṇidatta ([Su 1939](#): 125), the heading of this chapter is “the method of piercing and joining the ear” (कर्णव्यधबन्धविधि), instead of the Nepalese version’s “the method of piercing the ear” (कर्णव्यधविधि). The topic of joining the ear (कर्णबन्ध) is discussed in passages 17–20 of the Nepalese version. However, it appears that only subsequent redactors reflected its importance by including it in chapter headings.

The Nepalese version also omits the opening remark on Dhanvantari that appears in subsequent versions of the text. For a discussion of the frame story in the Nepalese version, see Birch, Wujastyk, Klebanov, Parameswaran, et al. 2021.

When commenting on this statement, Ḍalhaṇa ([Su 1938](#): 76) and Cakrapāṇidatta ([Su 1939](#): 125) observed that only the ears of healthy people should be pierced, and they quoted the lost authority Bhoja to affirm this: “When piercing the ears of chil-

- 2 One may pierce a child's ears for the purpose of preserving and decorating. During the bright fortnight, when the child is in the sixth or seventh month, on renowned days, half days, hours and constellations, the physician, with a calming presence, sits the boy, who has received a benediction and the recitation of a blessing,<sup>82</sup> on the lap of a wet-nurse.<sup>83</sup> Then, he should pull the ear with his left hand and pierce straight through with his right hand at a naturally-occurring cleft.<sup>84</sup> For a boy, do the right ear first; for a girl, do the left one. Use a needle on a thin ear; an awl on a thick one.<sup>85</sup>
- 3 One may know that it was pierced in the wrong place if there is excess blood or too much pain. The absence of side-effects is a sign that it has been pierced in the right place.<sup>86</sup>

dren who are free of disease at these times, their ear flaps and apertures, as well as limbs, increase" (1.16.1 (Su 1938: 76)).

Some texts use the adjective कर्ण-वेधनी rather than व्यधनी.

- 82 The causative form व्यधयेत् is known in Classical Sanskrit (Whitney 1885: 166). The compound कृतमङ्गलस्वस्तिवाचनं "who has received a benediction and the recitation of a blessing" is an emendation based on the similar text at 3.2.25 (Su 1938: 346). Cf. also 3.10.8, 24 (Su 1938: 388, 390) that have slightly different formulations.
- 83 The versions of 1.16.3 known to Cakrapāṇidatta (Su 1939: 126) and Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938: 76) have the additional compound कुमारधराङ्के ("on the lap of one who holds the child") after धात्र्यङ्के. The gender of कुमारधर is made clear by Ḍalhaṇa's gloss "a man who holds the child." Also, both versions add बालक्रीडनकैः प्रलोभ्य ("having enticed with children's toys") to indicate that the child should be tempted with toys to stay on the assistant's lap. According to Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.3 (Su 1938: 76), the toys include replica elephants, horses, bulls and parrots. Ḍalhaṇa further mentions that others read भक्ष्यविशेषैर्वा ("or by special treats") before बालक्रीडनकैः, but we see no trace of these small kindnesses in our witnesses.
- 84 The versions of 1.16.3 of Cakrapāṇidatta (Su 1939: 126) and Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938: 76) add that this naturally-occurring cleft is illuminated by a ray of sunshine (आदित्यकरावभासिते).  
The syntax of this slightly long sentence is unusual because of the dual object तौ "the two (ears)" at the start of the sentence, which is remote from the main verb. The other singular accusatives referring to the ear being pierced are governed by absolutes.
- 85 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.3 (Su 1938: 76) clarifies that the awl is a shoe-maker's knife for piercing leather. He also cites the authority of "the notes of Lakṣmaṇa" (Lakṣmaṇa-ṭippaṇaka) on the issue of the thickness of the needle. The Notes of Lakṣmaṇa is not known from any earlier or contemporary sources and was presumably a collection of glosses on the Suśrutasaṃhitā that was available to Ḍalhaṇa in twelfth-century Bengal. See Meulenbeld (HIML: IA, 386).
- 86 At this point, MS Kathmandu KL 699 is missing a folio, so the rest of this chapter is

- 4 In this context, if an ignorant person randomly pierces a duct there will be fever, burning, swelling, pain, lumps, paralysis of the nape of the neck, convulsions, headache or sharp pain in the ear.<sup>87</sup>
- 5 Having removed the wick (वर्त्ति) because of the accumulation of humours or an unsatisfactory piercing at that location,<sup>88</sup> he should smear it with barley, liquorice, *Indian madder*, and the root of the *castor oil tree*, thickened with honey and ghee. And when it has healed well, he should pierce it again.<sup>89</sup>
- 6 He should treat the properly-pierced ear by sprinkling it with raw sesame oil. After every three days one should make a thicker wick and do the very same sprinkling.<sup>90</sup>
- 7 Once the ear is free from humours or side-effects, one should put in a light dilator (प्रवर्धनक) in order to enlarge it enough.<sup>91</sup>

constructed on the basis of witnesses MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333 and MS Kathmandu NAK 1-1079.

- 87 This passage is significantly augmented in Cakrapāṇidatta's and Ḍalhaṇa's versions, to outline the specific problems caused by piercing three ducts called कालिका, मर्मिका and लोहितिका (1.16.4 (Su 1939: 126) and 1.16.5 (Su 1938: 77) respectively). In fact, the order of the problems mentioned in the Nepalese version has been retained in the other versions and divided between each duct. Cakrapāṇidatta's commentary on 1.16.4 (Su 1939: 126) cites several verses attributed to Bhoja on the problems caused by piercing these three ducts in the ear flap: 'लोहितिका, मर्मिका and the black ones are the ducts situated in the earflaps. Listen in due order to the problems that arise when they are pierced. Paralysis of the nape of the neck and convulsions, or sharp pain arise from piercing लोहितिका. Pain and lumps are thought to arise from piercing मर्मिका. Piercing कालिका gives rise to swelling, fever and burning.'
- 88 In addition to these reasons, Ḍalhaṇa at 1.16.6 (Su 1938: 77) added "because of piercing with a painful, crooked and unsatisfactory needle" (क्लिष्टजिह्वाप्रशस्तसूचीव्यधात्) and "because of a wick that is too thick" (गाढतरवर्तित्वात्). Ḍalhaṇa was aware of the reading in the Nepalese version because in his commentary on 1.16.6 (Su 1938: 77) he noted that some read "because of the accumulation of humours" rather than "because of piercing with a painful, crooked and unsatisfactory needle or because of a wick that is too thick." On the concept of humoral accumulation (समुदाय), see the important analysis by Meulenbeld (1992).
- 89 The description of the drug is ambiguous: the word "root" could be taken with each plant, or just with the last. The vulgate reads just "castor oil root" so we assume that is the traditional interpretation.
- 90 Describing ear and nose operations similar to those here, Celsus described the use of a quill (Latin *pinna*) where the Sanskrit authors use a cotton wick (*De Medicina* VII ¶10–11, Spencer 1935–38: 3, 366–367).
- 91 Cakrapāṇidatta on 1.16.6 (Su 1939: 127) and Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.8 (Su 1938: 77) pointed out that the dilator can be made of wood, such as that of the *prickly chaff-flower*,

- 8 A person's ear enlarged in this way can split in two, either as a result of the humours<sup>92</sup> or a blow.

*Listen to me about the ways of joining it can have.*

- 9 Here, there are, in brief, fifteen ways of mending the ear flap.<sup>93</sup> They are as follows: Rim-join (नेमीसन्धानक), Lotus-splittable (उत्पलभेद्यक), Dried Flesh (वल्लूरक), Fastening (आसङ्गिम), Cheek-ear (गण्डकर्ण), Take away (आहार्य), Ready-Split (निर्वेधिम), Multi-joins (व्यायोजिम), Door-hinge (कपाटसन्धिक), Half door-hinge (अर्धकपाटसन्धिक), Compressed (संक्षिप्त), Reduced-ear (हीनकर्ण), Creeper-ear (वल्लीकर्ण), Stick-ear (यष्टीकर्ण), and Crow's lip (काकौष्ठ).<sup>94</sup>

In this context, among these,

Rim-join:	both flaps are wide, long, and equal.
Lotus-splittable:	both flaps are round, long, and equal.
Dried flesh:	both flaps are short, round, and equal.
Fastening:	one flap is longer on the inside.
Cheek-ear:	one flap is longer on the outside. <sup>95</sup>
Take-away:	the flaps are missing, in fact, on both sides.
Ready-split:	the flaps are like a dais (पीठ).
Multi-joins:	one flap is small, the other thick, one flap is equal, the other unequal.
Door-hinge:	the flap on the inside is long, the other is small.
Half door-hinge:	the flap on the outside is long, the other is small.

the [neem tree](#) and [tree cotton](#). Ḍalhaṇa added that it can also be made of lead and should have the shape of the [datura](#) flower. The manuscripts have variant readings for लघुप्रवर्धनकमामुञ्चेत् at this point that include a scribal emendation, none of which construe plausibly. It is possible that the unusual verb form आ+√मुच् puzzled the scribes and caused the implausible scribal readings and emendations.

- 92 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.9 ([Su 1938](#): 77) notes that the word दोष here can refer to either a humour, such as wind, as we have understood it, or a disease generated from a humour.
- 93 The Nepalese version uses the word सन्धान to refer to joining a split in an ear flap, which is consistent with the terminology in the verse cited above (8). However, 1.16.10 of Ḍalhaṇa's version ([Su 1938](#): 77) uses the term बन्ध here and at the very beginning of the chapter (i.e., 1.16.1) to introduce the topic of repairing the ear.
- 94 For an artist's impression of these different kinds of joins in the ear flap, see Majno [1975](#): 290 (reproduced as Figure 3.2 in Wujastyk [2003b](#): 154).
- 95 For an artist's impression of this join, see Majno [1975](#): 291 (reproduced as Figure 3.3 in Wujastyk [2003b](#): 155).



These ten options for joins of the ear should be bound. They can mostly be explained as resembling their names.<sup>96</sup> The five from compressed (संक्षिप्त) on are incurable.<sup>97</sup> Among these, “Compressed” has a dry ear canal and the other flap is small. “Reduced ear” has flaps that have no base and have wasted flesh on their edges. “Creeper-ear” has flaps that are thin and uneven. “Stick-ear” has lumpy flesh and the flaps are stretched thin and have stiff ducts. “Crow-lip” has a flap without flesh with compressed tips and little blood. Even when they are bound up, they do not heal because they are hot, inflamed, suppurating, or swollen.<sup>98</sup>

- 10 A person wishing to perform a join of any of these should therefore have supplies specially prepared according to the recommendations of the “Preparatory Supplies” chapter.<sup>99</sup> And in this regard, he should particularly gather<sup>100</sup> top layer of fermented liquor, milk, water, fermented rice-water, and powdered earthenware crockery (कपालचूर्ण).<sup>101</sup>

96 Cakrapāṇidatta on 1.16.9–13 (Su 1939: 128–129) and Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.10 (Su 1938: 77–78) provide examples of how the names of these joins describe their shapes. For example, the rim-join (नेमीसन्धानक) is similar to the join of the rim of a wheel (चक्रधारा).

97 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.10 (Su 1938: 77–78) mentions that some do not read the statement that only five are incurable, and they understand the causes of unsuccessful joins given below (i.e., heat, inflammation, suppuration and swelling) as also pertaining to the first ten when they do heal.

98 The version of 1.16.11–13 known to Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938: 78) has four verses (श्लोक) at this point that are not in the Nepalese manuscripts. The additional verses iterate the types of joins required for ear flaps that are missing, elongated, thick, wide, etc. All four verses were probably absent in the version of the *Suśrutasamhitā* known to Cakrapāṇidatta. He cites the verses separately in his commentary, the *Bhānumatī* (Su 1939: 128–129), introducing each one as ‘some people read’ (के चित्पठन्ति). However, in Trikamajī Ācārya’s edition of the *Sūtrasthāna* of the *Bhānumatī*, the root text is largely identical to the one commented on by Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938), even in instances like this where Cakrapāṇidatta’s commentary indicates that he was reading a different version of the *Suśrutasamhitā*. See further the discussion on p. ?? above.

99 *Suśrutasamhitā* 1.5 (Su 1938: 18–23), probably verse 6 especially, that lists the equipment and medications that a surgeon should have ready.

100 The reading in the Nepalese manuscripts of विशेषतश्चाग्रोपहरणीयात् has been emended to विशेषतश्चात्रोपहरेत् to make sense of the list of ingredients, which is in the accusative case. Also, the repetition of अग्रोपहरणीयात् in the Nepalese version suggests that its second occurrence, which does not make good sense here, is a dittographic error.

101 The term कपालचूर्ण is unusual. Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938: 79) defines it as the powder of fragments of fresh earthen pots and Cakrapāṇidatta (Su 1939: 129) as the powder of earthenware vessels.

Next, having made the woman or man tie up the ends of their hair, eat lightly and be firmly held by qualified attendants, the physician considers the joins and then applies them by means of cutting, splitting, scarification, or piercing.<sup>102</sup> Next, he should examine the blood of the ear to know whether it is tainted or not. If it is tainted by wind, the ear should be bathed with *fermented rice-water* and water; if tainted by choler, then cold water and milk should be used; if tainted by phlegm, then *top layer of fermented liquor* and water should be used, and then he should scarify it again.

After arranging the join in the ear so that it is neither proud, depressed, nor uneven, and observing that the blood has stopped, one should anoint it with honey and ghee, bandage each ear with *tree cotton* and gauze (प्लोत), and bind it up with a thread, neither too tightly nor too loosely. Then, the physician should sprinkle earthenware powder on it and provide medical advice (आचारिक). And he should supplement with food as taught in the “Two Wound” chapter.<sup>103</sup>

- 11 *One should avoid rubbing, sleeping during the day, exercise, overeating, sex, getting hot by a fire, or the effort of speaking.*
- 12 One should not make a join when the blood is too pure, too copious, or too thin.<sup>104</sup> For when the ear is tainted by wind, then it is obstructed by blood, unhealed and will peel. When tainted with choler, it becomes pinched (गाढ), septic and red. When tainted by phlegm, it will be stiff and itchy. It has excessively copious suppuration and is swollen. It has a small amount of wasted (क्षीण) flesh and it will not grow.<sup>105</sup>
- 13 When the ear is properly healed and there are no complications, one may very gradually start to expand it. Otherwise, it may be inflamed (संरम्भ), burning, septic or painful. It may even split open again.

<sup>102</sup> There are syntactic difficulties in this sentence. We have adopted the reading in Ḍalhana’s version (Su 1938: 78), which has च कृत्वा following सुपरिगृहीतं. It is likely that a verb, such as कृत्वा, dropped out of the Nepalese transmission.

<sup>103</sup> *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 4.1 (Su 1938: 396–408).

<sup>104</sup> 1.16.17 of Ḍalhana’s version (Su 1938: 79) reads “impure” for the Nepalese “too pure,” which would appear to make better medical sense. Emending the text to नाशुद्ध- for नातिशुद्ध- in the Nepalese version would yield the same meaning as Ḍalhana’s version.

<sup>105</sup> In his edition of *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, Ācārya (Su 1938: 79 n. 1) includes in parentheses the following treatment for these conditions, which according to a footnote is not found in the palm-leaf manuscript he used: ‘One should sprinkle it with raw sesame oil for three days and one should renew the cotton bandage after three days’ (आमतैलेन त्रिरात्रं परिषेचयेत्त्रिरात्राच्च पिचुं परिवर्तयेत्).

- 14 Now, massage for the healthy ear, in order to enlarge it.  
One should gather as much as one can the following: a [monitor lizard](#), scavenging and seed-eating birds, and creatures that live in marshes or water,<sup>106</sup> fat, marrow, milk, and sesame oil, and white mustard oil.<sup>107</sup> Then cook the oil with an admixture of the following: [purple calotropis](#), [white calotropis](#), [heart-leaf sida](#), [country mallow](#), [country sarsaparilla](#), [Indian kudzu](#), [liquorice](#), and [hornwort](#).<sup>108</sup> This should then be deposited in a well-protected spot.
- 15 *The wise man who has been sweated should rub the massaged ear with it. Then it will be free of complications, and will enlarge properly and be strong.*<sup>109</sup>
- 16 *Ears which do not enlarge even when sweated and oiled, should be scarified at the edge of the hole, but not outside it.*<sup>110</sup>
- 17 *In this tradition, experts know countless repairs to ears. So a physician who is very intent on working in this way may repair them.*<sup>111</sup>

<sup>106</sup> For such classifications, see the analyses by Zimmermann (1999) and Smith (1994).

<sup>107</sup> Ḍalhaṇa's version of 1.16.19 (Su 1938: 79) includes ghee. However, Ḍalhaṇa's remarks on this passage and Cakrapāṇidatta's on 1.16.18 (Su 1939: 130) indicate that they knew a version of this recipe, perhaps similar to the Nepalese one, that did not include ghee. Ḍalhaṇa also noted that others simply read four oils, beginning with fat and without milk, whereas Cakrapāṇidatta said that some say it is made with four oils and milk.

<sup>108</sup> The version of of this verse known to Ḍalhaṇa (vulgate (Su 1938: 79)) adds several ingredients to this admixture, including [prickly chaff-flower](#), [Withania](#), [milk-white](#), [sweet plants](#) and [Indian ipecac](#). Also, it has [beggarweed](#) instead of [Indian kudzu](#). When commenting on 1.16.19, Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938: 79) noted that some do not read [sweet plants](#) and [Indian ipecac](#). Therefore, at his time there were other versions of this recipe circulating, with fewer ingredients, as seen in the Nepalese version.

<sup>109</sup> For these aims (i.e., healing and enlarging the ear), the text known to Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938: 79) had an additional verse and a half describing an ointment for rubbing the ear and [sesame oil](#) cooked with various medicines for massage. Cakrapāṇidatta (Su 1939: 131) did not comment on these verses, nor verse 15 of the Nepalese version, and so the version of the *Suśrutasamhitā* known to him may not have included them.

<sup>110</sup> Ḍalhaṇa's version of 1.16.23 (Su 1938: 79–80) added another hemistich that stated more explicitly that the scarification should not be done on the outside of hole as it will cause derangement.

<sup>111</sup> After verse 17, the 1938 edition of Ācārya (Su 1938: 80) has in parentheses nineteen verses on diseases of the ear lobes, treatments and complications. It is possible that these verses were in some of the witnesses used by Ācārya to construct the text as they occur in other manuscripts, such as MS Hyderabad Osmania 137-3(b). However, Cakrapāṇidatta (Su 1939: 132) and Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938: 80) stated that some read about the diseases of the ear lobes in this chapter whereas others read about them in the chapter on various treatments (मिश्रकचिकित्स) (SS 5.25), which does indeed begin with

- 18 If an ear has grown hair, has a nice hole, a firm join, and is strong and even, well-healed, and free from pain, then one can enlarge it slowly.<sup>112</sup>
- 19 Now I shall describe the proper method of making a repair when a nose is severed. First, take from the trees a leaf the same size as the man's nose and hang it on him.
- 20 Next, having cut a slice of flesh (वध्र),<sup>113</sup> with the same measurements, off the cheek, the end of the nose is then scarified.<sup>114</sup> Then the undistracted physician, should quickly put it back together so that it is well joined.
- 21 Having carefully observed that it has been sewn up properly, he should then fasten it along with two tubes.<sup>115</sup> Having caused it to be raised,<sup>116</sup> the powder of sappanwood,<sup>117</sup> liquorice and Indian barberry should be sprinkled on it.<sup>118</sup>
- 22 The wound should be covered properly with tree cotton and should be moistened repeatedly with sesame oil. Ghee should be given to the man to drink. His digestion being complete, he should be oiled and purged in accordance with the instructions specific to him.<sup>119</sup>

a discussion of the disease परिपोट. Ḍalhaṇa went on to say that some believe that these verses were not composed by sages and, therefore, do not read them.

112 The order of verses 17 and 18 is reversed in Ḍalhaṇa's version (Su 1938: 80).

113 The version of 1.16.28b known to Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938: 81) reads "bound, connected (बद्धम्)" instead of "slice of flesh (वध्र)." This is a critical variant from the surgical point of view. If the slice remains connected, it will have a continuing blood supply. This is one of the effective techniques that so astonished surgeons witnessing a similar operation in Pune in the eighteenth century (see Wujastyk 2003b: 67–70).

114 Or 1.16.20 could be mean, '... off the cheek, it is fixed to the end of the nose, which has been scarified.' Unfortunately, the Sanskrit of the Nepalese version is not unambiguous on the important point of whether or not the flap of grafted skin remains connected to its original site on the cheek. However, Ḍalhaṇa (Su 1938: 81) clarified the meaning of the vulgate here by stating that one should supply the word "flesh" when reading "connected," thus indicating that he understood the flesh to be connected to the face.

115 Ḍalhaṇa noted that the two tubes should be made of reed or the stalk of the leaf of the castor-oil plant (on 1.16.21 (Su 1938: 81)). They should not be made of lead or betel nut because the weight will cause them to slip down.

116 The Sanskrit term उन्नामयित्वा in 1.16.21 is non-Pāṇinian.

117 For पत्ताङ्ग (sappanwood), there are manuscript variants पत्ताङ्ग (MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333) and पत्तङ्ग (MS Kathmandu NAK 1-1079). Also, MS Kathmandu KL 699 (f. 14r:1) has पत्ताङ्ग in a verse in 1.14 (cf. 1.14.36 (Su 1938: 66)). The text known to Ḍalhaṇa has पत्तङ्ग (1.16.29 (Su 1938: 81)) and this term is propagated in modern dictionaries.

118 Ḍalhaṇa glossed अञ्जन as रसाञ्जन, elixir salve (Su 1938: 81).

119 The expression स्वयथोपदेश is ungrammatical but supported in all available witnesses.

- 23 *And once healed and really come together, what is left of that slice of flesh (वध्र) should then be trimmed.<sup>120</sup> If it is reduced, however, one should make an effort to stretch it, and one should make its overgrown flesh smooth.<sup>121</sup>*

<sup>120</sup> The vulgate transmission has lost the word वध्र and replaced it with अर्ध “half,” which makes little sense in this surgical context.

<sup>121</sup> Ḍalhaṇa accepted a verse following this, 1.16.32 (Su 1938: 81), which pointed out that the procedure for joining the nose is similar to that of joining the lips without fusing the ducts. He noted that earlier teachers did not think this statement on the nose and lips was made by sages, but he included it because it was accepted by Jejjaṭa, Gayadāsa and others, although they did not comment on it because it was easy to understand. Cakrapāṇidatta also did not comment on this additional verse (Su 1939: 133).



# Sūtrasthāna 28: Unfavourable Prognosis in Patients with Sores

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>122</sup>

Goswami studied the commentaries of Ḍalhaṇa and Cakrapāṇidatta on this and the following adhyāyas up to 32, focussing on the topic of omens (अरिष्ट). He concluded that both authors were influenced by the Indriyasthāna of the *Carakasamhitā* in their commentaries on this topic.<sup>123</sup>

## Translation

- 1 Thus, living creatures and their strength, complexion (वर्ण) and energy (ओजस्) are rooted in food. That (food) depends on the six flavours (रस). Thus, the flavours depend on substance (द्रव्य), and substances depend on medicinal herbs. There are two kinds of them (herbs): stationary and mobile.<sup>124</sup>

---

<sup>122</sup> HIML: IA, 219.

<sup>123</sup> Goswami 2011.

<sup>124</sup> 1.1.28 (Su 1938: 7), tr. P. V. Sharma 1999–2001: 1, 21.





**Nidānasthāna**



# Nidānasthāna 1: The Diagnosis of Diseases Caused by Wind

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>125</sup>

## Translation

- 1 And now we shall explain the chapter about diagnosis of diseases caused by wind.<sup>126</sup>
- 2
- 3 Suśruta asks after holding the feet of Dhanvantari who is the foremost of the upholders of righteousness and who emerged with nectar.
- 4 O King!<sup>127</sup> Divodāsa<sup>128</sup> the best of the orators! Let us know about the naturalized and disordered form of wind, its places in the body and types of the diseases caused by its contamination.
- 5–9ab On hearing his words, the venerable sage replied that being independent, constant and omnipresent this wind is revealed as self-born and supreme being. It is worshiped by all words and situated in the form of life-force in all beings. It is the cause of origin, continued existence and

---

<sup>125</sup> HIML: IA, 234. (Ruben [1954b](#)) studied the wind doctrines in the *Carakasaṃhitā*.

<sup>126</sup> Present chapter describes the diseases caused by vitiated wind and its mixing with other humours. In the medical term it is known as rheumatism.

<sup>127</sup> H and N both mss read भूपते instead of कौपनै: in the vulgate.

<sup>128</sup> <https://doi.org/10.20935/AL2992>

destruction of beings. It is unmanifest though manifests in/through action, cold, dry, light in weight, variable, moving horizontally with two attributes i.e., sound and tangibility<sup>129</sup>. Having all chief qualities which are sattva, rajas and tamas but predominated by rajas. It has inconceivable power. It is inducer of humours<sup>130</sup> and distinguished in the group of diseases<sup>131</sup>. *It moves quickly, moves again and again*, stays in stomach and intestine.

- 9cd Now, listen to the description of wind which moves inside the body.
- 10 Unvitiated wind makes possible objects of senses connect with intellect. It maintains a state of equilibrium between the humours, semen/7 fluids? and Gastric fluid and actions done by body, speech and intellect bring to one's right place.<sup>132</sup>
- 11 Just as the five types of bile have been described based on their name, place and their actions, similarly, one type of air is of five types based on name, place, action and diseases.
- 12 Five types of wind:
1. Vital wind (*prāṇa*)
  2. *udāna*
  3. *samāna*
  4. *vyāna*
  5. *apāna*

above five types of wind remain in their equilibrium and hold the body<sup>133</sup>.

129 According to Ḍalhana, it has power to divide humours, fluids, feces etc. moving inside the body and it is the cause to the disease in the limbs. It carries humours, chyle, semen/7 fluids? and feces further in the body. The wind which is moving outside is holding the earth and body. (सा चास्य शक्तिः शरीरदोषमूत्रपुरीषादिविभागोऽवयवसंस्थानका(क)रणं दोषधातुमलसंवहनादिश्च, शरीराद्बहिस्तु संचरतो धरणीधारणादिः Su 1938:257)

130 Ḍalhana suggests नेता=प्रेरक (Su 1938:257)

131 Ḍalhana suggests राट्=राजते not राजा

132 According to Ḍalhana, सम्पत्तिः=सम्पन्नता at 1.6.3 (Su1938:23). Ḍalhana commented that Gayadāsa reads 'इन्द्रियार्थोपसंप्राप्तिः' but not written here because of being detailed. (गयदासाचार्यस्तु इमं श्लोकं 'इन्द्रियार्थोपसंप्राप्तिः' इत्यादि कृत्वा पठति, स च विस्तरभयान्न लिखितः) But H and N MSS suggest 'इन्द्रियार्थोपसम्पत्तिः'

133 Ḍalhana suggests स्थान=साम्य, यापयन्ति=धारयन्ति (The manuscripts all read प्राणोदानः समानश्च व्यानोपानस्तथैव च . against the vulgate's प्राणोदानौ समानश्च व्यानश्चापान एव च . I think प्राणोदानौ, व्यानापानौ or व्यानश्चापान एव च should be read)

- 13–14ab The wind that flows through the mouth is called the vitality (prāṇa), which holds the body. It propels down food inside the stomach and engages with the gastric fluid<sup>134</sup>. Unvitiated Vital wind mostly causes hiccups, asthma etc. diseases.
- 14cd–15 The wind which flows upwards in the body, the best among all five winds is called udāna. Singing, speech etc. individual things done by the same wind. Unvitiated udāna wind mostly causes diseases above the collar bone e.g., nose, eyes, head and ears<sup>135</sup>.
- 16–17ab The samāna wind flows in stomach and duodenum. It helps gastric fluids in the digestion of food and separates the substances produced from it e.g., chyle, impurities, urine and feces. Unvitiated samāna wind causes diseases like a chronic enlargement of spleen (gulma), weak digestion, and diarrhea.
- 17cd–18 The vyāna wind moves inside the whole body and circulates chyle and expels sweat and blood outside the body. It helps in the movements of limbs in every way. Contaminated vyāna wind causes all diseases occurring in the body.
- 19–20ab Staying in the abdomen, the apāna wind propels wind of body, feces, urine, semen, womb and menstruation to come out of the body at their proper time. Contaminated apāna wind causes terrible diseases that occur in the bladder and anus.
- 20cd–21ab Contaminated vyāna and apāna wind causes defect of semen and gonorrhea, while simultaneous contamination of all the five winds surely leads to death.
- 21cd–22ab I shall therefore describe all the diseases caused by the contamination of winds staying in the various places of the body.
- 22cd–24ab Contaminated wind in the stomach causes disease like vomiting, loss of consciousness, fainting, thirst, heart-seizure, pain in lateral sides of stomach. It also causes rumbling of the bowels, acute pain, inflated belly, pain while discharging urine and feces, suppression of urine and pain in the loins.
- 24cd Contaminated wind residing in the ear causes loss of function of the senses.

<sup>134</sup> Ḍalhaṇa suggests head, chest, throat and nose as locations of prāṇa. (Sus1938:259)  
Gayadāsa suggests अग्नि for प्राण.

<sup>135</sup> Ḍalhaṇa suggests it also causes diseases like cough etc. (चकारादन्यादपि प्राणोदानौ, व्यानापानौ कासादीन् करोति .)

- 25–29 Residing in the skin,<sup>136</sup> contaminated wind causes discoloration of skin, throbbing of parts of the body, dryness, numbness, itching, pricking pain, swelling. It being inherent in the flesh of body causes swelling with pain and being inherent with the fat of the body causes swelling with slight pain but do not become wound.<sup>137</sup>
- Residing in the artery it causes acute pain, contraction and filling up of the artery.<sup>138</sup> It stuns, vibrates and destroys<sup>139</sup> the muscle tissues by residing in the muscle. Residing in the joints it causes pain and swelling. Residing in the bone it causes fracture and dryness of bones which also cause to acute pain and, in the marrow, it dries up marrow which may never be cured. Residing in the semen it causes non-production and distorted production of semen.<sup>140</sup>
- 30–31ab Contaminated wind moves from the hand, foot, head, then it may be omnipresent or pervade the entire body of men and causes stiffness, convulsion, numbness and acute pain.
- 31cd–32ab Wind (5 types) mixed with other doṣas (bile etc.) in the places mentioned above produces mixed types of pains.
- 34cd–35ab Prāṇa wind surrounded by bile causes vomiting and burning sensation, by phlegm it causes weakness, exhaustion, laziness and bad taste.
- 35cd–36ab Udāna wind surrounded by bile causes loss of consciousness, stupor, dizziness and fatigue, by phlegm it causes absence of perspiration, slowness of digestion, sensation of coldness.
- 36cd–37ab Samāna wind surrounded by bile causes perspiration, a burning sensation, heat and stupor, association with phlegm it causes erection in urine, feces and limbs.
- 37cd–38ab Apāna wind associated with bile causes a burning sensation, heat and the voiding of blood with urine, with phlegm it causes a feeling of heaviness in the lower part of the body and coldness.

136 Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa both suggest त्वक्=रस. Gayadāsa explained that chyle stays in the skin and therefore, in the verse त्वक्स्थ should be read as रसस्थ as we read secondary meaning in the sentences like गङ्गायां घोषः.

137 The MS H does not read व्रणांश्च रक्तगो ग्रन्थीन् सशूलान् मांससंश्रितः . against the vulgate. (Su 1938: 261).

138 According to Ḍalhaṇa सिराकुञ्चनं is also known as कुटिला सिरा (Su 1938: 262)

139 Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa both suggest the meaning of हन्ति for being not capable of both stretching and contraction. सन्धिगतः संधीन् हन्ति प्रसारणाकुञ्चनयोरसामर्थ्यं करोति (Su 1938: 262) ...

140 Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa both suggest that a distorted production विकृतां प्रवृत्तिम् is too fast, too slow, knotty and discolored.

- 38cd–39ab Vyāna wind surrounded by bile causes a burning sensation, tossing of the limbs and fatigue, by phlegm it causes stiffening limbs, uddanḍaka? and pain in the swelling.
- 40–41 Persons who are of delicate nature, follow faulty diet and lifestyle, ? also afflicted with intoxicating drinks, sexual enjoyment, exercise causes vitiation of wind and blood.??
- 42 Riding elephant, horse and camel, lifting great weights, consuming vegetables which are pungent, hot, sour, alkali and being frequently distressed situation causes contamination of wind.
- 43–44 Blood flowing in the body blocks the passage of contaminated wind which moves quickly in the body. Excessively irritated wind–being contaminated by wind and dominance of wind, it is called वातरक्त Gout<sup>141</sup>.
- 45–46 Vātarakta causes – pricking pain, dryness, loos of sensation in the feet. Contaminated Bile mixed with blood causes sharp burning sensation, excessive heat and soft swelling with red color in the feet. Contaminated Phlegm mixed with the blood causes itching in the feet. It makes feet white, cold, dry, thick and hard. All defects <sup>142</sup> in the blood contaminated by humours (wind, bile, phlegm) manifest their symptoms in the feet.
- 48 This disease spreads all over the body like rat poison by staying in feet or sometimes hands.
- 49 Gout spreads in the knee and the skin bursts and starts bleeding makes it incurable. It is mitigatable if it is of a year's old.
- 50–51 When vitiated wind enters in the all arteries it causes quickly convulsions again and again and because of frequent convulsions आक्षेप it is called आक्षेपक.
- 52–56 Because in this situation a person often sees darkness and fall, it calls spasmodic contraction (अपतानक) <sup>143</sup> . If wind mixed with phlegm stays excessively in the arteries, it stiffens body like a staff and it is called दण्डापतानक: epilepsy with convulsions. Vitiated wind entered in the arteries and bends the body like a bow, it is called धनुःस्तम्भ Tetanus. When viti-

141 In the medical term वातरक्त is known as Gout. Cakrapāṇi called it आढ्यरोगः Caraka-saṃhitā sū.14.18 and ci.28.66

142 Gayadāsa suggests सर्वे दुष्टाः शोणितं चापि nominative plural instead of locative singular.

143 Gayadāsa accepted the Nepalese reading ताम्यते which vulgate does not read. Gayadāsa gives definition of अपतानक as येनापताम्यते means a situation in that a person sees the dark.

ated wind accumulated in the regions of finger, ankle, abdomen, heart, chest, and throat swiftly attack on the group of vein and ligaments, it gets a person's eyes stuck, chin stuns, side breaks and vomiting phlegm he moves inwards like a bow and this situation is known as *emprosthotos* (अन्तरायाम्). When vitiated wind attacks on outside ligaments, body of a person will stretch forward like a bow. In this situation, if the chest, hip or thigh break, wise men call it incurable.

- 58 Aggravated phlegm and bile mixed with wind or only vitiated wind causes fourth convulsive disease due to trauma.
- 59 Convulsions due to miscarriage, excessive bleeding, and injury are incurable <sup>144</sup>.
- 60–62 When excessively agitated and strong wind flows in the arteries which spread downward, upward, and sideways, it loses the joints and kills the other side of body. The best of physicians calls it paralysis (पक्षाघात). <sup>145</sup> Then half of his entire body becomes inefficient and unconscious. Afflicted by wind he suddenly falls or dies.
- 62.1 Bile integrates with wind causes burning sensation, affliction, and infatuation. When it integrates with phlegm causes coldness, morbid swelling, and heaviness. <sup>146</sup>.
- 63 A paralysis (पक्षाघात) caused by wind <sup>147</sup> is curable with most difficulty. It becomes curable when caused by bile and phlegm mix with the wind. It becomes incurable when caused by the loss of bodily constituents.
- 64–66 Verses from 64–66 are not found in the Nepalese manuscripts. These verses discuss the term spasmodic contradiction (अपतन्त्रक) which is the same as अपतानक. Ḍalhaṇa commented on ni.1.64–66 (Su 1938:267) that because of having the similar condition in both situations, some scholars do not read the अपतन्त्रक. In the verse ni.1.59 Ḍalhaṇa commented that the आक्षेपक and अपतानक is same (Su 1938:266) and again he suggested that the अपतानक and अपतन्त्रक both are similar condition.

<sup>144</sup> According to Ḍalhaṇa convulsion (आक्षेपक) is also known as अपतानक (Su 1938:266). He further mentions that even if fortunately, it is cured, it cripples the limb.

<sup>145</sup> In the ca.6.28.55 पक्षाघात is described as monoplegia (एकाङ्गारोगः). In that case it damages one of the limbs. In the medical terms paralysis (पक्षाघात) is known as hemiplegia.

<sup>146</sup> This verse is not available in vulgate. It deals with the symptoms when bile and phlegm mix with the wind. It is already discussed in su.2.1.38.

<sup>147</sup> Here the term शुद्धवात suggests the meaning of the wind that is devoid of bile and phlegm.



- Therefore, आक्षेपक, अपतानक and अपतन्त्रक should be the same. Gaya-dāsa further commented that the Caraka has not read आक्षेपक as अपतानक and therefore described the अपतन्त्रक separately (Su 1938:267).
- 67 This verse also not found in the Nepalese Manuscripts. The verse describes rigidity of neck (मन्यास्तम्भ). According to Ḍalhaṇa, rigidity of neck is a prior symptom of spasmodic contradiction.
- 68-72 By speaking very loudly, eating hard foods, excessively laughing and yawning, lifting heavy loads and sleeping in an awkward position, vitiated wind lodges into face painfully and produces spasm of the jaw-bones (अर्दित) disease. In that case, half of the face and neck become curved, head trembles, speech hindrances, deformity occurs in the eyes, eyebrows and cheeks.<sup>148</sup> Experts in diseases call this disease spasm of the jaw-bones (अर्दितं)
- 73 Spasm of the jawbones cannot be cured when it stays in a person for three years, who is very weak, stays without blinking, trembles, and constantly speaks gibberish.
- 74 Arteries of Heel and toes stricken by vitiated wind prevents stretching of thighs. This disease is known as sciatica (गृध्रसी).
- 75 Arteries which run to the tips of fingers from behind the roots of the upper arm affected by vitiated wind terminates all activities of arms and back. This disease is called paralysis of arms and back (विश्वस्त्रि).<sup>149</sup>
- 76 Vitiated wind and blood in the joint of knee causes Synovitis of knee joint (क्रोष्टुकशीर्ष). In this extremely painful situation, the shape of swelling in knee joints seems like a head of Jackal.
- 77 Vitiated wind resides in the waist attacks on the arteries of thigh causes limpness (खञ्ज) and when it attacks on both the thighs a person becomes lame (पङ्गु).
- 78 A person who trembles at the beginning of walking or walks limping and whose foot joint has become loose is called lathyrism (कलायखञ्ज).
- 79 Vitiated wind residing in the ankle-joint causes pain when one steps on uneven ground. This disease occurs is called वातकण्टक.
- 80 Vitiated wind mixed with bile and blood cause burning sensation in feet. It should be declared as burning sensation in feet (पाददाह).
- 81 A person whose feet tingle and become insensible due to vitiation of

<sup>148</sup> Ḍalhaṇa suggests नेत्रादीनाम् इत्यादि शब्दात् भूगण्डादि उपसङ्ग्रहः

<sup>149</sup> Both the MSS N and H read विश्वस्त्रि instead of the vulgate reading विश्वाची. There is no such word found in other Āyurveda texts.

- phlegm and wind is called पादहर्ष.
- 82 Vitiated wind lying in the shoulder dries the shoulder joints and it is called अंसशोष. It also bends the arteries of shoulder, and this disease is called अवबाहुक.<sup>150</sup>
- 83 Vitiated wind singly or mixed with phlegm cover the channel of ears causes deafness.
- 84 Vitiated wind saturated with phlegm covering the arteries which conduct the sound of speech makes a person inactive (अक्रिय), dumb (मूक). He s (मिर्मिर)peaks indistinctly through the nose and stammers (गद्गद).<sup>151</sup>

150 Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa both have defined two diseases i.e., अंसशोष and अवबाहुक respectively.

151 Nepalese Manuscripts read मिर्मिर instead of the Vulgate's reading मिन्मिण. Dictionary of MW suggests the meaning of मिर्मिर = having fixed unwinking eyes which is not relevant to the disease of tongue.

# Śārīrasthāna



# Śārīrasthāna 2: On Semen and Menstrual Fluid

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>152</sup> Das (2003: chs 6–8) also studied topics of this chapter.

## Translation

- 1 We shall now explain the purification of sperm and women's fertile blood.
- 2 ...

---

<sup>152</sup> [HIML](#): IA, 244–246.



**Cikitsāsthāna**





# Cikitsāsthāna 4: On the Treatment of Wind Diseases

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>153</sup>

## Translation

- 1 Now we shall describe the treatment of wind diseases.
- 2
- 3 When the wind enters the stomach and one vomits as a result, one should sequentially administer the six-bearing (षड्वरण) remedy with cool water for seven nights.<sup>154</sup>
- 4 The remedy constituting of [leadwort](#), ??, [velvet-leaf](#), ??, [Himalayan monkshood](#), and [myrobalan](#) cures serious diseases and is called the six-bearing (षड्वरण).
- 5 When the wind has entered the abdomen (पक्वाशय), one should treat it with evacuation of the bowels (विरेचन) using an unctuous substance. One should also treat it with cleansing enemas and excessively salty foods.<sup>155</sup>

<sup>153</sup> [HIML](#): IA, 265–266.

<sup>154</sup> The vulgate has the reading छर्दयित्वा which means “after making [him] vomit”. Thus, vomiting is a part of the treatment. Whereas in the H manuscript, vomiting is the symptom of the ailment that needs to be cured.

<sup>155</sup> In H, the reading प्रासाः should be read as प्राशाः for it to mean “foods”. Otherwise, प्रासाः means “throwing/discharging” or “darts/spears”.

This is a change we should make in the edition.

You need not give all the grammatical details about śrotādi. Assume you are talking to knowledgeable Sanskrit scholars.

- 6 Once the wind has entered the lower belly, a cleansing enema is recommended. And, on the wind having entered the ears, etc., the wind-slayer sequence should be executed.<sup>156</sup>
- 7 On the wind having entered the skin, flesh, and blood, one should rub oil on the body (अभ्यङ्ग), apply a poultice on the body (उपनाह), massage the body (मर्दन), smear ointments on the body (आलेपन), and do blood-letting (असृग्विमोक्षण).
- 8 On the wind having entered the ligaments, joints, and bones, the wise [physician] should employ the application of an unctuous poultice (स्नेहोपनाह), cauterization (अग्निकर्म), binding (बन्धन), and massage.
- 9 On the wind being concealed within the bones, it (wind) should be beaten by churning those body parts with hands. A strong physician should then insert a narrow tube within the bone and suck out the wind completely from the bone.<sup>157</sup>
- 10 On the wind having entered the semen, one should perform the treatment for the defects of the semen.<sup>158</sup>
- 11 The intelligent physician should conquer the wind situated within the whole body by immersion, *kuṭī*, *karṣa*, *prastara*, oil massage, enema, and blood-letting.<sup>159</sup> Or, in case of wind situated in one part of the body and

156 In the H manuscript reading "श्रोतादि...", there appears to be a double sandhi. See *Nidānasthāna* Ch. 1 verse 12 for another example of double sandhi. Furthermore, the syllable in H after "चानिल" is not clear. It could be "ह्य" or "हा" or perhaps something else. The reading in the vulgate for this syllable is "हा". Thus, the complete word becomes "अनिलहा" which means "the slayer of wind". This makes proper sense in this verse. We have considered this reading ("अनिलहा") for our translation.

157 The H manuscript has the reading अस्थिनि which is the accusative plural form of अस्थि. The accusative case does not make sense here. The vulgate has the reading अस्थनि, the locative singular form of अस्थि. This reading makes proper sense in the verse. Therefore, we have accepted the vulgate reading अस्थनि for translating this verse.

158 Ḍaḥaṇa comments (Su 1938: 421) that this treatment for the defects of the semen is mentioned [earlier] as the शुक्रशोणितशुद्धि, the purification of the semen and the blood. This is the *Sārīrasthāna* Ch. 2, शुक्रशोणितविशुद्धि. The second hemistich of this verse is not a part of this sentence but is a part of the sentence in the next verse. That is because the remedies described in this hemistich are appropriate for the disease described in the first hemistich of the next verse.

159 In H, the last syllable नि of the compound word does not make sense. The vulgate has the compound word ending with भि: which makes proper sense. For making a meaningful translation, we have accepted the vulgate reading here. Furthermore, Ḍaḥaṇa describes the treatments *kuṭī*, *karṣū*, and *prastara* in his commentary in (Su 1938: 421). Regarding blood-letting, he comments there that because the verse has the plural form

- contained within it, the intelligent physician should cure it with horns.
- 12 On the wind having mingled with phlegm, bile, and blood, the physician should treat it with non-hostile remedies. However, on the wind being inactive, the physician should perform blood-letting many times.
- 13 [On the wind being inactive], one should also lick the milk of the *pancamūlī* accompanied with salt and ??<sup>160</sup> mixed with oil, and one should indeed consume meat soup made sour with fruit.<sup>161</sup>
- 14-15 Or, one should consume cereal soup with a good amount of ghee, or the food that is beneficial and that curtails the wind. However, *cottony jujube*, etc.<sup>162</sup> with a wind-removing remedy combined with all sour substances and with the meat from a water body along with lots of unction, lukewarm<sup>163</sup> and salty, is well known as *Sālvala*.
- 16ab For patients with diseases of the wind, one should always apply this (*sālvala*) as a poultice.
- 16cd-18ab Whether a body part has become contracted or bent, is troubled by a [wind] disease, or has become numb, one should tightly bind it with a long strap made of tree bark, cloth, or wool [after applying the *sālvala* poultice]. Or, after massaging the affected body part and applying the *śālvala*<sup>164</sup> poultice on it, one should insert it into a sack made of the hide of a cat, mongoose, *udra*<sup>165</sup>, or deer.
- 18cd-19 Vomiting and *nasya* done under the supervision of an expert physician alleviates the wind that has entered the chest, loins, shoulders, or the nape of the neck. *Śirobasti* and blood-letting alleviate the wind situated in the head.
- 20-21ab In that (*śirobasti*), the oil should be held carefully for a duration of one thousand *mātrās*. Enema (बस्ति) alone curtails the wind that is situated throughout the whole body or in one part. This is just as the wind [curtails] its force.<sup>166</sup>

---

सिरामोक्षैः, five blood vessels have to be drained of blood if the wind is not pacified by oil massage, etc.

160 *Āgāradhūma* seems to be a plant as seen in Monier Williams' Sanskrit dictionary.

161 The vulgate reading दिह्यात् (should apply) totally changes the meaning.

162 For grammatical accuracy, there needs to be a *visarga* at the end of the word काकोल्यादि.

163 Perhaps सुखोष्णम् is an indeclinable. But, it could also be a grammatical inaccuracy where it should have a *visarga* at the end: सुखोष्णः.

164 This seems to be the correct spelling as against the unclarity in the earlier verses.

165 some aquatic animal

166 The last four words in H, तस्य वेगम् इवानिलः do not make sense in the context.

Perhaps  
kalka here  
could also  
mean the  
Terminalia  
Bellerica  
(विभीतक).

- 21cd-26 Oils, perspiration, oil massage, enema, unctuous purging of the bowels, *śirobasti*, oiling the head, unctuous smoke, gargling with lukewarm water, *nasya*, unctuous paste, milks, meats<sup>167</sup>, soups, oils<sup>168</sup>, any unctuous substance, unctuous and salty meals that are made sour by fruits, bathing with lukewarm water, massages, saffron, ??, *cassia cinnamon*, *costus*, *cardamom*, *crape jasmine*, garments made of silk, wool, and fur, soft cotton garments, inner rooms with sunlight, no wind flow, and a soft bed, taking the warmth of fire, and celibacy, etc. are to be collectively employed for patients with wind diseases.
- 27 One should take *akṣa* quantities of unguent pastes<sup>169</sup> of *turpeth*,<sup>170</sup> ??, ??, ??, ??, and *embelia*, a *Bengal quince* fruit equivalent measure of ??-root and ??, two *pātra* quantities of both *triphalā*-decoction<sup>171</sup> and yogurt, and one *pātra* measure of ghee.<sup>172</sup> One should mix these ingredients all at once and cook the mixture properly. This (resultant) is ??-ghee. Unctuous purging of bowels is prescribed for treating wind disorders.<sup>173</sup> This procedure of making ??-ghee should also be referred for making ??-ghee and ??-ghee.<sup>174</sup>
- 28 One should collect the wooden logs of the instruments that have been used for a long time for extracting oil from sesame seeds. One should then have them chopped into very tiny pieces and then pound those pieces. Next, one should put them in a big vessel, submerge them in water, and boil them. Thereafter, one should collect the oil from the surface of the water with a goblet or by hand. Thereafter, one should properly cook wind-alleviating herbs with this oil that was effectively

167 The plural indicates milk and meat from various animals.

168 This is the second occurrence of the word *सेहा*: in this sentence. This seems to be an anomaly.

169 कल्क also means an unguent paste. Refer to Apte's dictionary.

170 In H, perhaps it should have been त्रिवृद् instead of तृवृत्.

171 त्रिफलारस is here taken to mean a decoction of *triphalā*.

172 The exact measurements of *akṣa* and *pātra* are given in Ḍalhaṇa's commentary in *Su 1938*: 422.

173 It should be understood here that the unctuous substance to be used for purging the bowels is the ??-ghee.

174 अशोक and रम्यक are the Ashoka and Chinaberry respectively.

cooked.<sup>175</sup> This is the *anutaila* (अनुतैल)<sup>176</sup> that is mentioned in wind disorders. It is called *anutaila* because it is produced from tiny oily objects.<sup>177</sup>

- 29 Alternatively, one should burn a great amount of ??-wood on the ground for one night. When the fire gets extinguished the ash should be removed. Then, the ground that is relieved of the fire should be soaked with a hundred pots of oil cooked with ??, ??, and other herbs, and left in that condition for one night. Thereafter, one should take all the earth that is oily<sup>178</sup> in a big vessel and totally cover it with water.<sup>179</sup> The oil that rises up in that vessel should be taken out with both hands and kept nicely covered. Thereafter, one should properly cook that oil for as long as possible<sup>180</sup> with one thousand parts of each of the following—a decoction of wind-alleviating herbs, meat soup, milk, and *kāñjika*<sup>181</sup>—and thus prepare the *sahasra-pāka* (that which is cooked with thousands). The admixture added to the oil contains the *hemavata* herbs<sup>182</sup>, herbs of the southern region, *Withania*, and other wind-alleviating herbs.

While the oil is being cooked, conchshells should be blown loudly, umbrellas should be held, huge drums should be resounded, and whisk fans should be waved.<sup>183</sup> Thereafter, the perfectly cooked oil should be poured into a golden or silver pot and stored. This *sahasra-pāka* is the oil possessing undiminishing potency and is fit for

175 In H, the word दन्तप्रतीवायं in the compound word वातघ्नौषधदन्तप्रतीवायं does not appear to make sense. Perhaps the syllable य should be प, thus making the word प्रतीवापं that refers to an admixture of substances to medicines either during or after decoction. Refer to Monier-Williams's Sanskrit dictionary.

176 The न् should be read ण्.

177 The word अनु in the compound word अनुतैलद्रव्येभ्यः should be read अणु.

178 In H, the word यावन् should have been यावान्.

179 The reading in H, कटाहेभ्यः सिंचेत्, does not make sense here. Thus, we have accepted the vulgate reading कटाहे ऽभ्यासिंचेत् for the translation.

180 The phrase "यावता कालेन शक्ययात् पक्वम्" appears as a part of a new sentence in H. But, we should take it to be a part of the earlier sentence for it to make proper sense.

181 Ḍalhaṇa comments (Su 1938: 423) that the word अम्ल here means काञ्जिक which is the water drained after boiling rice and is a little fermented. Refer Monier Williams's Sanskrit Dictionary.

182 The word should be हैमवताः as in the vulgate. It means "the herbs of the snowy mountains". Ḍalhaṇa comments (Su 1938: 423) that हैमवताः refers to the herbs that grow in the northern region.

183 These activities are a symbolic way of showing reverence.

kings.

Thus, that which is cooked with a thousand parts is called *sahasra-pāka*.

- 30 One should collect fresh leaves of *castor oil tree*, ??, ??, *weaver's beam tree*, *Indian beech*, ??, and *leadwort*.<sup>184</sup> These leaves should be completely pounded along with salt in a mortar. This mixture should be put in a pot filled with oil<sup>185</sup>. It (pot) should be smeared<sup>186</sup> with cow-dung. Thereafter, the pot should be heated.<sup>187</sup> This (resultant) is the *patra-lavaṇa* (leaf-salt) that is mentioned in wind disorders.

- 31 In the same way, one should pound the stalks of ?? and eggplants smeared with salt and fill a pot with it.<sup>188</sup> In that pot, one should add ghee, oil, fat, and marrow. Then, one should smear it<sup>189</sup> and heat it as earlier. This (resultant) is the *sneha-lavaṇa* (fat-salt) that is mentioned in wind disorders.

- 32 One should collect the fresh fruits, roots, leaves, and branches of all the twenty [herbs]: ??, ??, *Tellicherry bark*, *Bengal quince*, *purple calotropis*, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, *Indian beech*, ??, *poison berry*, ??, *marking-nut tree*, ??, ??. One should then mix them with salt and heat them as earlier.<sup>190</sup> The oil on top should be poured out completely with the salty mixture intact [at the bottom]. This mixture should be cooked thoroughly. The admixture added to it consists of *long pepper*, etc. This (resultant) is the salt called *kalyāṇaka* that is mentioned in wind disorders and in meals and drinks for the patients troubled by *plihāgnisaṃga*, indigestion, loss of appetite, and piles.

Thus ends the fourth chapter on the treatment of wind diseases.

184 In H, the ending नाम् should be णाम् due to sandhi.

185 स्नेहघट can also mean a pot filled with ghee

186 The H or vulgate do not specify with words that it is the pot to be smeared. But, it is to be understood.

187 The word दाहयेत् usually refers to burning, but sometimes it can refer to heating.

188 In H, there should be a *visarga* after लवणा.

189 As earlier, the pot should be smeared with cow-dung.

190 It is to be understood that all these fresh branches, leaves, fruits, and roots of the herbs should be completely pounded together with salt. The mixture should then be put into a pot filled with oil or ghee. The pot should be smeared with cow-dung and then heated.

# Cikitsāsthāna 5: On the Treatment of Serious Wind Diseases

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>191</sup>

## Translation

- 1 Now we shall describe the treatment of serious wind diseases.
- 2
- 3 One group says that the blood afflicted by wind (wind-blood) (*vāta-rakta*) is of two types: spreading out over a surface (उत्तान) and deep (अवगाढ).<sup>192</sup> However, this is not correct.<sup>193</sup> Why? Just as leprosy, after spreading over a surface it (afflicted blood) becomes deeply situated. Therefore, its being of two different types is refuted.
- 4 When the wind is aggravated by fighting a strong person, etc.<sup>194</sup>, one's corrupted blood caused by eating heavy or hot food before the last meal is digested blocks the path of the aggravated wind. It then combines with the wind and simultaneously creates pain due to the wind-blood.

---

<sup>191</sup> HIML: IA, 266.

<sup>192</sup> Ḍalhaṇa comments (Su 1938: 424) that उत्तान refers to being situated in the skin and flesh, and अवगाढ refers to being situated internally.

<sup>193</sup> In H, the word तन् should be तत्.

<sup>194</sup> These factors that aggravate the wind are mentioned in *Nidānasthāna*, Ch. 12, text 6.



This [condition] is called wind-blood (*vāta-śoṇita*). At first, it is situated in the hands and feet.<sup>195</sup> Later, it spreads throughout the body. Its early forms are pricking pain, burning, itching, ulcer, trembling<sup>196</sup>, roughness of the skin, pulsation in the blood vessels, tendons, and tubular vessels<sup>197</sup>, weakness of the thighs, as well as the sudden appearance of dark brown, tawny, or red spots on the soles of the feet, fingers, ankles, and wrists. The disease becomes fully manifest in the person who does not undertake the means to revert the disease or applies a wrong treatment. Its symptoms have been mentioned. Among them, weakness occurs for the one who does not counter the disease.

- 5 Generally, wind-blood occurs in those who are very delicate, those who eat the wrong foods and enjoy improperly, those who are fat, and even in those who indulge in pleasure.
- 6 In that regard, one should treat the patient who is not degenerating due to wasting of life air, thirst, fever, unconsciousness, dyspnea, trembling, and loss of appetite, is not oppressed by the contraction [of limbs], is strong, composed, and has the means.
- 7 In the treatment, at the beginning itself one should do blood-letting of the wind-affected body part little by little and more than once. That (slow blood-letting) is because of the danger of further aggravation of wind. One should avoid doing blood-letting of the part hardened or weakened by excessive wind.<sup>198</sup> Thereafter, one should make the patient do the remedies of vomiting, etc. If the wind that is mixed [with blood] or separated is very aggravated then one should make him consume aged ghee or goat-milk. Or, [one can give him] half a measure of oil added with an *akṣa* of liquorice and cooked with hare foot uraria<sup>199</sup>, or the oil that is sweetened by sugar and honey and cooked with dried ginger and bulrush. Or, one should boil milk with an eight times volume of the decoction of the following herbs: beautyberry, ??, ??, hare foot uraria<sup>200</sup>, ??, wild asparagus, ??, and ??. This milk should then be used to cook oil with the admixture of pastes of ??, ??, ??, ??, deodar,

195 In H, the word तन् should be तत्.

196 In H, there should not have been the स् after स्तम्भ.

197 In addition to blood vessels, it would also include the nerves.

198 In H, the reading अम्लान does not make sense given the context. Therefore, we have accepted the vulgate reading म्लान for the translation.

199 Ḍalhaṇa glosses (Su 1938: 425) *śṛgālavinnā* as *prśnīparṇī*.

200 According to Ḍalhaṇa, *śṛgālavinnā* is *prśnīparṇī*.



??, and ??. This (resultant) should be utilised in drinks, etc. Or, one should use the oil that is cooked with a decoction of wild asparagus, prickly chaff-flower<sup>201</sup>, ??, liquorice, giant potato, heart-leaf sida, country mallow, and ??<sup>202</sup>, with the admixture of cottony jujube, etc. Or, one should use the heart-leaf sida-oil that is cooked as *śatapāka*.<sup>203</sup> Or, [the affected body part] should be moistened with milk that is boiled with the roots of wind-alleviating herbs, or it should be moistened with sour things.<sup>204</sup> In that regard, five remedies prepared with milk are described. For preparing a poultice, milk should be cooked in ghee, oil, fat, marrow, and *dugdha*<sup>205</sup> separately with each of these powdered grains or pulses—barley, wheat, sesame, mung beans, or green gram—that is mixed with unctuous pastes of cottony jujube, purple roscoe, ??, ??, heart-leaf sida, country mallow, hare foot uraria<sup>206</sup>, ??, ??, sugar, bulrush<sup>207</sup>, ??, and ??. Or, the essence of unctuous fruits<sup>208</sup> can be used as a poultice. Or, a *veśavāra*<sup>209</sup> prepared from the flesh of a fat *cilicima* fish<sup>210</sup> can be used instead. Or, [one can use] the poultice containing

201 Ḍalhaṇa glosses (Su 1938: 425) *mayūra* as *apāmārga*.

202 Ḍalhaṇa comments (Su 1938: 425) that sacred grass, ??, ??, ??, ??, and ?? are called *ṛṇa* (grass).

203 *Śatapāka* seems to be an oil that is prepared with a hundred parts of some things similar to *sahasrapāka* that is prepared with one thousand parts of some herbs. Refer *Cikitsāsthāna* Ch. 4 text 29 for the preparation of *sahasrapāka*.

204 Ḍalhaṇa comments (Su 1938: 425) that the sour things (*amla*) are ??, ??, ??-water, etc. *Surā* is some kind of liquor, *sauvīra* is perhaps the fruit of the jujube tree, and *tuṣa* is perhaps *Terminalia Bellerica* (विभीतक).

205 In the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, the word for milk is *kṣīra* or *payas* but not *dugdha*. Therefore, the word *dugdha* here can mean the sap of plants or something that is extracted.

206 *śṛṅgālavinnā*

207 For *kaśerukā*

208 Ḍalhaṇa comments (Su 1938: 425) that the unctuous fruits mentioned here are sesame, castor, flax, ??, etc.

209 In H, the reading वैशवारो does not make sense. It should have been वेशवारो, as shown in the vulgate, which is the reading we have accepted here.

*Veśavāra* is boneless meat minced, steamed, and added with spices, ghee, etc. Refer to 'Ayurveda Medical Dictionary' by Ranganayakulu Potturu.

Perhaps the word वैशवार is an earlier form of the word वेशवार.

210 H has the compound word नलपीनमत्स्य. नलमीन is a particular fish known as *cilicima* (चिलिचिमः). See *Amarakośa*. Also, if the name is नलमत्स्य then the word पीन (fat) within the name is not according to proper Sanskrit. But, it can be allowed because the word मत्स्य (fish), instead of being a part of the name, can be considered to mean fish in general and thus the word पीन becomes its modifier. Thus, नलपीनमत्स्य can mean "a

The webpage  
https://hindi.shabd.in/vairagya-  
shatakam-  
bhag-  
acharya-  
arjun-  
tiwari/post/117629  
says that  
this verse  
belongs  
to the  
*Nītiratna*. I  
could not  
find this  
text.

Bengal quince-rind<sup>211</sup>, crape jasmine, deodar, ??, ??, peas, costus, ??, liquor, yogurt, and whey. Or, [one can use] the ointment prepared by mixing citron, amla<sup>212</sup>, salt, and ghee with honey and horseradish tree-root. Or else, [one can use] the unctuous sesame paste.

- 8 When the [condition of wind-blood] has a predominance of bile, the patient should be made to drink a decoction of grapes, ??-fruit, Indian ipecac, liquorice, sandalwood, and ??. This decoction is sweetened with honey and sugar before consumption. Or, the decoction of wild asparagus, pointed gourd, cassia cinnamon, triphalā, ??, and ?? should be given. [The patient should be administered] ghee that is prepared with sweet, bitter, and astringent [remedies].<sup>213</sup>

[The patient] should be sprinkled with a decoction of ??, ??, ??, and ?? mixed with goat-milk<sup>214</sup>, or with rice water that is mixed with milk, sugarcane juice, honey, and sugar, or with whey and sour rice gruel mixed with a decoction of grapes and sugarcane. Or else, [the patient] should be sprinkled with ghee that is prepared with *jīvanīya*<sup>215</sup> or sprinkled with ghee that is purified for one hundred times.

The poultice [to be applied] should be made of rice flour or of the paste of sour rice gruel mixed with ??, ??, ??<sup>216</sup>, ??, ??, ??, horned pondweed, sacred lotus, etc. The poultice should be mixed with ghee.

- 9 The [condition of wind-blood] with a predominance of blood should be treated in the same way. Also, blood-letting should be done repeatedly.
- 10 However, when the [condition of wind-blood] has a predominance of phlegm, the patient should be made to consume a decoction of ?? and

fat fish that is a नल (*cilicima*)".

Ḍalhaṇa says in his comment (Su 1938: 425) that नलमीन is a type of रोहित (*rohita*). Monier Williams says that *rohita* is a kind of fish: *Cyprinus Rohitaka*. Regarding the *rohita* fish, there is a *subhāṣita*: अगाधजलसञ्चारी न गर्व याति रोहितः | अङ्गुष्ठोदकमात्रेण शफरी फर्फरायते || This indicates that *rohita* is a deep water fish.

211 The word पेसिका in H should be read पेशिका.

212 Perhaps it could mean vinegar or sour curds. Refer to Monier Williams Sanskrit Dictionary.

213 Ḍalhaṇa comments (Su 1938: 425) that the sweet remedies are cottony jujube, etc., bitter remedies are pointed gourd, etc., and astringent remedies are triphalā, etc.

214 The compound word ending with कषायेण is taken to be a *bahuvrīhi* for अजाक्षीरेण (goat-milk).

215 *Jīvanīya* seems to be a group of medicinal herbs. There is an Ayurvedic preparation called *jīvanīya-ghṛta*. Refer to the *Āyurvedīya Śabdakośa* vol. 1.

216 तालीस should be read तालीश

turmeric that is sweetened with honey, or a decoction of *triphalā*, or a paste of liquorice, ??, chebulic myrobalan, and ??. He should be made to drink chebulic myrobalan with water mixed with a little urine. He should be sprinkled with oil, urine, salty water, and liquor that are acidic<sup>217</sup>. Or, he should be sprinkled with a decoction of ??, etc.

The patient should be massaged with ghee cooked with sour cream, urine, liquor, ??<sup>218</sup>, liquorice, ??<sup>219</sup>, and ??.

The poultice should be made of either the paste of white mustard, or the paste of sesame and *Withania*, or the paste of ??<sup>220</sup>, selu plum, and wood apple, or the paste of honey, horseradish tree, and hogweed,<sup>221</sup> or the paste of dry ginger, long pepper, black pepper,<sup>222</sup> ??, and poison berry.<sup>223</sup> These five poultices are prepared with salty water. Thus, they have been described.

- 11 In case of combined aggravation of two humours or simultaneous aggravation of all three humours, the stated methods of treating those aggravations should be combined.<sup>224</sup>
- 12 In all [aggravations], one should consume chebulic myrobalan with jaggery. Or, one should have a diet of rice cooked in milk for ten days and should drink a mixture of long peppers crushed in milk, with increasing by five long peppers each night. Then one should reduce them again by the order of five more [each night].<sup>225</sup> In this way, one should [reduce] all the long peppers. This is called *Pippalīvarddhamānakam* (Increasing Long Peppers). It indeed cures wind-blood, intense fever,<sup>226</sup> loss of appetite, jaundice, abdominal affection, piles, heavy breathing, cough, wasting disease, weak digestion, and heart disease.

The provisional edition should be modified accordingly.

217 Reading the word सुक्त in H as शुक्त

218 Monier Williams states *Rumex Vesicarius* for *śuktā*

219 DCS has this entry: *Cryptolepsis buchananii* Roem. et Schult. (Surapāla (1988), 453)  
*Decalepis hamiltonii* Wight et Arn. (Surapāla (1988), 453)

220 According to V. S. Apte, दारु can mean देवदारु.

221 H has a short अ at the end instead of the long आ.

222 व्योषतिक्ता refers to the group of these three pungent spices. Also see *Sūtrasthāna* 14.35.

223 In H, the Sanskrit syntax does not match up with what the author is trying to say. The name of the fifth paste should also have been in the nominative case, as the other four pastes.

224 It means that the respective methods of treating the aggravation of individual humours should be combined.

225 In H, the letter ज्ञ in भूयञ्च should have been श्.

226 Perhaps विषमज्वर could mean irregular fever.

The poultice is a paste of ??, sandalwood, ??, ??, wild asparagus, bul-rush,<sup>227</sup> ??, ??, liquorice, ??, ??, ??, ??, heart-leaf sida, country mallow, and *Holostemma creeper* mixed with milk. Or it is a paste of ??, liquorice, and ?? mixed with ghee and cream. Or it is olibanum cooked with milk that is mixed with ??, ??, ??, liquorice and the group of sweet herbs.

Old ghee that is cooked with ?? and ?? and sweetened with sugar and honey is for drinking. Old ghee that is cooked with *jīvanīya* or that is cooked with a decoction of ?? is for sprinkling. Cooked heart-leaf sida oil is for sprinkling, bathing, enema, and eating<sup>228</sup>. One should eat food preparations made of rice, ??, barley and wheat accompanied with milk, meat soup, or mung beans soup that is not sour. Blood-letting also [should be done]. The treatments of vomiting, purging of bowels, enema, and oily enema should be conducted when the humours are highly aggravated.

13

14 There are verses in this regard.<sup>229</sup>

*There is immediate relief by the application of remedies such as these by which the physicians cure the chronic condition of wind-blood.*

15-16 Poultice, sprinkling [oil], plaster, oil massage,<sup>230</sup> spacious and comfortable rooms<sup>231</sup> with no wind, soft pillows, comfortable beds, and soft massages are recommended in the condition of wind-blood.

17 Exercise, mating, anger, eating hot, sour, or salty foods, sleeping during the day, and food that is slimy or heavy should be avoided.

18 One should treat the person who is affected with spasmodic contraction,<sup>232</sup> who does not have droopy eyes and crooked eyebrows, whose fingers have not become rigid, who is not perspiring or trembling, who

227 H has कशेरुका.

228 Perhaps it means that one should eat foods cooked in that oil.

229 The word भवति in H should have been भवन्ति.

230 In H, the part व्यजनानिला: does not make proper sense in the verse. Emending it to व्यजनानि च could be a consideration, but fanning (व्यजन) a patient with wind-blood is not good, as understood from the recommendation that such a patient should stay in a non-windy room. Therefore, we have accepted the vulgate reading for the first half of this verse.

231 In H, read the स सरणानि as श.

232 In H, the reading अपताकिनम् should have been अपतानकिनम्.

is not in a state of delirium, who is not bed-ridden,<sup>233</sup> and who is not restrained externally. There at the beginning itself,<sup>234</sup> after rubbing the patient with oil and making him perspire, one should treat him with a strong *avapīḍa*<sup>235</sup> in order to clear his head. Then, the patient should be made to drink filtered ghee that is properly cooked with a decoction of *beggarweed* and other herbs, sugarcane juice, milk, and yogurt. In that way, the wind does not spread exceedingly.

Thereafter, one should gather wind-alleviating herbs such as *deodar*, etc. and other constituent parts, along with ??, ??, and ??, and the flesh of a freshwater aquatic creature all at one place and prepare a decoction of them. One should take this decoction and mix it properly with sour substances and milk, and then cook the *pratīvāpa*<sup>236</sup> of *liquorice* in this mixture along with ghee, oil, body fat, and bone marrow. This is *trivṛt* that should be recommended in treatments of sprinkling, oil massage, applying a poultice, oral consumption, oily enema, and errhine for patients having spasmodic contractions.

The patient should then be made to sweat by the methods described earlier. If the wind is stronger then the patient should be immersed in [a vessel] filled with lukewarm fluid used for sprinkling (*trivṛt*). Or he should be kept in the hot fireplace of a blacksmith.<sup>237</sup> Or else he should be made to sweat by [a mixture of] ??, *veśavāra*,<sup>238</sup> and milk.

Oil cooked with the juice of ??, ??, ??, ??, and ?? should be used in sprinkling, etc. for patients with spasmodic contractions.<sup>239</sup> Sour yogurt mixed with ?? and drunk on an empty stomach alleviates spasmodic contractions. Or else, ghee, oil, body fat, or bone marrow [can be consumed on an empty stomach].

There, Dalhana comments that de-liberation on *avapīḍa* had been done earlier when it was mentioned. Find that description to know more details.

233 V. S. Apte has खद्वयति. The *Āyurvedīya Śabdakośa* has the entry खट्वापातिन् which means "one who is inclined to fall from bed." Perhaps the reading in H has an error of the letter या which should have been पा.

234 In H, प्रागैव should have been प्रागेव.

235 The *Āyurvedīya Śabdakośa* has the entry अवपीड that means administering an oily paste through the nose. Refer *SS Cikitsāsthāna* Ch. 40 text 44 for a better understanding of *avapīḍa*.

236 It refers to an admixture of substances to medicines either during or after decoction. Refer to Monier-Williams's Sanskrit dictionary.

237 H has the reading रथाकारचुल्लयाम् that means "fireplace shaped like a chariot", but the vulgate reading रथकारचुल्लयाम् makes more sense here. Thus, we have accepted it.

238 Refer the above text no.7 for *veśavāra*. In H, the syllable वै should have been वे.

239 The word तैलम् is not present in H but is present in the vulgate. We have accepted it.

This procedure of treatment thus described is for spasmodic contractions caused only by wind. When mixed humours cause it then the treatment should also be mixed. And when the spasms subside the patient should be given *avapīḍa*-s. One should also consider the fats of cock, crab, black fish, and porpoise.<sup>240</sup> Milk prepared with wind-alleviating medicines. Gruel prepared with barley, ??, ??, ??, yogurt, ghee, and oil.

One should treat this recurring spasm for ten nights with oil massage, purging of bowels, enemas, and oily enemas. One should also consider the treatment of diseases caused by wind. One should also undertake preventive measure.

---

<sup>240</sup> H has the reading रसान् which means “juices”. It seems unrealistic that juice would be extracted by crushing these whole animals. Vulgate has the reading वसाः instead of रसान् which appears to be the more probable reading. Thus, we have accepted it.

# Cikitsāsthāna 15: On Difficult Delivery

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter on fetal malpresentation and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>241</sup> Das made observations about the afterbirth (अपरा) that is mentioned in 4.15.17 (Su 1938: 432).<sup>242</sup> Selby has explored gynecological narratives in ayurveda.<sup>243</sup>

## Translation

- 1 And now we shall explain the difficult delivery medically treated.
- 3 Nothing else is more difficult than the extraction of a foetus since it has to be performed in the region of vagina, liver, spleen, intestines and the uterus. Actions like pushing up, pulling down, cutting off, incising, removing, pressing and straightening must be done using one hand, without hurting the foetus or the pregnant woman, Therefore, having considered that and obtaining permission, one should proceed with care.
- 4 Eight types of the positions of difficult foetus have earlier been mentioned briefly. Even if, in the natural birth process also the large / wrong way of the head, shoulders or hips of a foetus / child cling firmly in the passage.

---

<sup>241</sup> HIML: IA, 271–272.

<sup>242</sup> Das 2003: 517.

<sup>243</sup> Selby 2005a,b.



- 5 In the case of a live foetus, the delivering ladies should attempt to deliver it. And, during this process, they should be made to hear the sacred verses repeatedly meant for expulsion of a foetus.

6 *O beautiful woman, may the divine nectar and the moon and the sun and Uccaiśravas reside icumbhalakan your house.*

7 *O lady, may this nectar extracted from the water release this tiny foetus of yours. May the fire, wind, sun and Indra together with the ocean bestow upon you the peace.*

- 9 And, as mentioned before (3.10.16-20) the medicine should be administered. In the case of a dead fetus, (the physician) having inserted (his) hand lubricated with the *dhanvaka*, *myttikā* – soil, the *śālmālī*- the *seemul* and ghee into the vagina of a woman lying on her back, whose thighs are bent with the elevated waist with the support of the cloth of *cumbhalaka* should take away the fetus. In the case, the fetus coming out with both the thighs, should be stretched out in a normal way. If the fetus has reached with only one thigh, spreading out its other thigh it should be taken out. If the fetus is coming out with its buttocks portion, squeezing the buttocks upward, spreading the thighs it should be taken out. A fetus having come in a transverse position like an oblique (तिर्यक्चीनस्य ?) iron club, lifting upward its half of the lower part from behind, straightening its half of the upper part, bringing it to the passage of vagina, it should be taken out. The last two positions of the dead fetus cannot be accomplished. Thus, in this state, instrument should be employed / surgery should be undertaken.

- 10 But, the live fetus should not be torn apart in any case. As, the live fetus may kill the mother and self soon.

- 12 Next, assuring safety to the lady, cutting the head of the fetus with the instrument that has disc on the top (मण्डलाग्र) or finger shaped instrument (अङ्गुलिशस्त्र); removing the skull, the fetus should be taken out holding the forceps at its chest and armpit. If the head of the fetus is not separated, the fetus should be drawn out from its orbital regions or cheek (with the forceps); if the shoulders are stuck up in the passage, the fetus should be taken out by cutting its arm / arms at the shoulder region; tearing the abdomen when bloated with wind just like a stretched leather bag used for holding water, casting off the intestine,



the loosened fetus should be taken out. Or else, if its thighs are adhered to the passage, the bones of the thighs should be cut and fetus is removed.

- 13 The fetus is adhered to the passage from whichever its body part, the physician by separating that part should remove the fetus carefully and by all means the woman should be protected.
- 14 For, irritated wind causes different movements of the fetus. In this situation, the wise physician should act intelligently.
- 15 And, the learned physician should not delay even for moment in removing the dead fetus as it kills mother in no time like a breathless animal.  
If impacted with hip, the hip bones should be cut and then delivered.



# Kalpasthāna



# Kalpasthāna 1: Protecting the King from Poison

## Introduction

The first chapter of the Kalpasthāna of the *Suśrutasamhitā* addresses the topic of protecting a king from those who would assassinate him using poison. The king's kitchen is presented as the site of greatest vulnerability. The staff in the kitchen must be vetted carefully and watched for signs of dissimulation. The description of the body-language that tells a poisoner (verses 18–25) are engaging and vivid. These verses are closely parallel in sense to a passage in the *Arthaśāstra* that says,

The signs of a poisoner, on the other hand, are as follow: dry and dark look on the face, stuttering speech, excessive perspiration and yawning, trembling, stumbling, looking around while speaking, agitation while working, and not remaining in his place.<sup>244</sup>

Next, the text discusses the signs of poison in toothbrushes, in food, drink, massage oil and other items that are likely to come into physical contact with the king. In passages that are again paralleled in the *Arthaśāstra* the work describes how poisoned food kills insects and crackles in a fire, flashing blue and the reactions of various birds to poison are described.<sup>245</sup>

The work then moves on to the various symptoms experienced by the king after being poisoned, and remedies appropriate to each case. Poison

---

<sup>244</sup> *Arthaśāstra* 1.21.8 (Kangle 1969: 1, 30), translation by Olivelle (2013: 97).

<sup>245</sup> Cf. *Arthaśāstra* 1.21.6, *ibid.*, Olivelle (2013: 96).

exhibits characteristic signs when added to milk and other drinks.<sup>246</sup> Further forms of poisoning, their symptoms and treatments are described and finally the king is advised to live amongst trusted friends and to protect his heart by drinking various ghee compounds. He should eat the meat and soup made from various animals, including peacock, mongoose, alligator, deer. The chapter ends with the description of an emetic.

## Literature

A brief survey of this chapter's contents and a detailed assessment of the existing research on it to 2002 was provided by Meulenbeld.<sup>247</sup> Translations of this chapter since Meulenbeld's listing have appeared by Wujastyk (2003b: 131–139), P. V. Sharma (1999–2001: 3, 1–15), and Srikantha Murthy (2000–02).<sup>248</sup>

## Manuscript notes

- MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333 has foliation letter numerals, for example on f. 323a, that are similar to MS Cambridge Add. 1693,<sup>249</sup> dated to 1165 CE noted in Bendall's chart of Nepalese letter-numerals Bendall 1883: Lithograph V, after p. 225

<sup>246</sup> Cf. *Arthaśāstra* 1.21.6 again.

<sup>247</sup> HIML: IA, 289–290.

<sup>248</sup> For a bibliography of translations to 2002, including Latin (1847), English (1877), Gujarati (1963) and Japanese (1971), see HIML: IB, 314–315.

<sup>249</sup> Scan at [cudl.lib.cam.ac.uk/view/MS-ADD-01693/1](http://cudl.lib.cam.ac.uk/view/MS-ADD-01693/1).

## Translation

- 1–2 And now I shall explain the procedures for safeguarding food and drink, as were declared by the Venerable Dhanvantari.<sup>250</sup>
- 3 Divodāsa, the king of the earth, was the foremost supporter of religious discipline and virtue. With unblemished instruction he taught his students, of whom Suśruta was the leader.<sup>251</sup>

### [Threats to the king]

- 4–5 Evil-hearted enemies who have plucked up their courage, may seek to harm the king, who knows nothing of it. He may be assailed with poisons by or by his own people who have been subverted, wishing to pour the poison of their anger into any vulnerability they can find.<sup>252</sup>
- 6 Therefore, a king should always be protected from poison by a physician.
- 7 The racehorse-like fickleness of men's minds is well known. And for this reason, a king should never trust anyone.<sup>253</sup>

250 MS H adds in the margin अथ खलु वत्स सुश्रुतः “Now begins Vatsa Suśruta.” This phrase has been copied here by the scribe from the beginning of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* chapter in the *sūtrasthāna* on the rules about food and drink (1.46.3 (Su 1938: 214)). The scribe presumably felt, not unreasonably, that this section had common subject matter with the present chapter. Further, SS 1.46.3 is the only place in the Nepalese transmission of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* that names Dhanvantari and integrates him into the narrative of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* as the teacher of Suśruta.

The mention of Dhanvantari here is the only other time in the Nepalese transmission that this authority is cited as the source of Ayurvedic teaching, and the unique occurrence of this actual phrase, “as was declared by the Venerable Dhanvantari.” See the discussion by Klebanov (2021a: 28–32), who concludes that the earliest recoverable recension of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* may have had the phrase only at this point and not elsewhere in the work. See the further discussion by Birch, Wujastyk, Klebanov, Parameswaran, et al. (2021).

251 This is a quite different statement from the vulgate which has Dhanvantari as the teacher, and calls him the Lord of Kāśī (काशिपति) (Su 1938: 559). Dalhaṇa followed the vulgate but explicitly noted the reading before us with small differences: दिवोदासः क्षितिपतिस्तपोधर्मश्रुताकरः “Divodāsa, the king of the earth, was a mine of traditions about discipline and virtue.”

252 Verses about the use of Venomous Virgins as a weapon do not appear in the Nepalese manuscripts. Cf. Wujastyk 2003b: 81 f., 132. This material is present in the commentary of Gayadāsa.

253 The verb √ śvas is conjugated as a first class root in the Nepalese manuscripts.

- 8–11 He should employ a doctor in his kitchen (महानस) who is respected by experts, who belongs to a good family, is orthodox, sympathetic, not emaciated, and always busy.
- 12–13 The kitchen should be constructed at a recommended location and orientation. It should have a lot of light,<sup>254</sup> have clean utensils and be staffed by men and women who have been vetted.<sup>255</sup>
- 17–18ab The chefs, bearers (बोढार), and makers of boiled rice soups and cakes and whoever else might be there, must all be under the strict control of the doctor.<sup>256</sup>
- 18cd–19ab An expert knows people's body language (इङ्गित) through abnormalities in voice, movement and facial expression. He should be able to identify a poisoner by the following signs.
- 19cd–23 Wanting to speak, he gets confused, when asked a question, he never arrives at an answer, and he talks a lot of confused nonsense, like a fool. He laughs for no reason, cracks his knuckles and scratches at the ground. He gets the shakes and glances nervously from one person to another. His face is drained of colour, he is grimy (ध्याम) and he cuts at things with his nails.<sup>257</sup> A poisoner goes the wrong way and is absent-minded.
- 25–27 I shall explain the signs to look for in toothbrush twigs, in food and drink as well as in massage oil (अभ्यङ्ग) and combs (अवलेखन); in dry rubs (उत्सादन) and showers, in decoctions (कषाय) and massage ointment (अनुलेपन); in garlands (स्रज्), clothes, beds, armour and ornaments; in slippers and footstools, and on the backs of elephants and horses; in nasya (सुर्फी), inhaled smoke (धूम), eye make-up (अञ्जन), etc., and any other things which are commonly poisoned. Then, I shall also explain the remedy.
- 28 Flies or crows or other creatures that eat a poisonous morsel (बलि)

Cf.  
Arthaśāstra  
1.21.8.

<sup>254</sup> We read महच्छुचिः with the Nepalese manuscripts and against the vulgate's महच्छुचि. We understand शुचिस् as a neuter noun meaning "light" following Apte (Apte: 1050a).

<sup>255</sup> Verses detailing the ideal staff are omitted in the Nepalese manuscripts. Cf. Su 1938: 560; Wujastyk 2003b: 132.

<sup>256</sup> The word सौपोदनैकपूपिक "chefs for the boiled rice soups and cakes" is grammatically interesting. The term सूपोदन (as opposed to सूपौदन) is attested in the *Bodhāyanīya-grhyasūtra* 2.10.54 (Shastri 1920: 68). More pertinently, perhaps, सूपोदन is attested in the Bower Manuscript, part II, leaf 11r, line 3 (Hoernle 1893–1912: vol. 1, p. 43).

<sup>257</sup> The word ध्याम is glossed by Ḍaḥana (in a variant reading) as someone who is the colour of dirty clothes 5.1 (Su 1938: 560).



- served from the king's portion, die on the spot.
- 29 Such food makes a fire crackle violently, and gives it an overpowering colour like a peacock's throat.
- 30–33 After a chukar partridge looks at food which has poison mingled with it, its eyes are promptly drained of colour; a peacock pheasant drops dead. A koel changes its song and the common crane rises up excitedly.<sup>258</sup> It will excite a peacock and the terrified parakeet and the hill myna screech. The swan trembles very much, and the racket-tailed drongo churrs.<sup>259</sup> The chital deer sheds tears and the monkey releases excrement.<sup>260</sup>
- 34cd Vapour rising from tainted food gives rise to a pain in the heart, it makes the eyes roll, and it gives one a headache.<sup>261</sup>
- 35, 36cd In such a case, an errhine and a collyrium that are costus, ??, *spikenard* and honey (मधुस);<sup>262</sup> a paste of sandalwood on the heart may also provide relief.<sup>263</sup>

<sup>258</sup> The verb अर्च्छति “rises up” is a rare form best known from epic Sanskrit (see Oberlies 2003: 212, §7.6.1). The transmitted form क्रौञ्च is obviously a colloquial version of Sanskrit क्रौञ्च. Commenting on 1.7.10 (Su 1938: 31), Ḍalhaṇa interestingly gives the colloquial versions of several Sanskrit bird names, even singling out pronunciation in the specific location of Kānyakubja. For क्रौञ्च he says that people pronounce it कुरञ्च and कौचि. The form क्रौञ्च is found in Pāli (see Cone 2001: 731, who notes that Ardhamāgadhi has the same form). Elsewhere, Ḍalhaṇa calls the bird क्रौञ्चिर, क्रौञ्चि, and कैचर (1.46.105 (Su 1938: 223), 6.31.154 (Su 1938: 684) and (6.58.44 (Su 1938: 790) respectively).

<sup>259</sup> Ḍalhaṇa seemed confused about the racket-tailed drongo (भृङ्गराज). He called it a generic drongo (भ्रमरक), a word that can also mean “bee,” (Dave 1985: 62), and then said that it is like the black drongo (धूम्याट) (for a nice explanation of this name, see Dave 1985: 62–63) and that people call it “the king of birds.”

<sup>260</sup> MS Kathmandu KL 699 reads “bull (वृषभ)” for “Chital deer (पृषत).” The latter may perhaps be mistaken for the former in the Newa script, although the reading of MS Kathmandu KL 699 is hard to read at this point.

<sup>261</sup> “Tainted” translates उपक्षिप्त. The word’s semantic field includes “to hurl, throw against,” and especially “to insult verbally, insinuate, accuse.” The commentator Ḍalhaṇa glossed the term as, “spoiled food given to be eaten” (विदूषितस्यान्नस्य भोक्तुं दत्तस्य), but he noted that some people read “उखाक्षिप्त” or “thrown into a pan.” Other translators have commonly translated it as “served,” perhaps influenced by Ḍalhaṇa’s “given (दत्त).”

<sup>262</sup> The vulgate supplies another phrase and verb at this point that is not present in the Nepalese transmission, but that makes the text flow more easily.

<sup>263</sup> *sing-1972* discussed the difficulties in identifying लामज्ज, a plant cited more often in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* than in the *Carakaśaṃhitā*; Ḍalhaṇa adopted the common view that

- 37 Held in the hand, it makes the hand burn, and the nails fall out. In such a case, the ointment (प्रलेप) is **beautyberry**, **velvet-mite**, soma and **blue water-lily**.<sup>264</sup>
- 38–39 If he eats that food, through inattention or by mistake, then his tongue will feel like a pebble (अष्टीला) and it will lose its sense of taste. It stings and burns, and his saliva (श्लेष्मन्) dribbles out.<sup>265</sup> In such a case, he should apply the treatment recommended above for vapour (बाष्प), and what will be stated below under “toothbrush twigs”.<sup>266</sup>
- 40 On reaching his stomach, it causes stupor (मूर्च्छा), vomiting, the hair stands on end, there is distension, a burning feeling and an impairment of the senses.<sup>267</sup>
- 41 In this case, vomiting must quickly be induced using the fruits of **emetic nut**, **gourd**, **red gourd**, and **luffa**, taken with milk and **watered butter**–

it is a type of *uśīra* or vetiver grass. The grammatical neuter form मधुस् “sweetness” of the Nepalese manuscripts is less common than neuter मधु “honey, sweetness, liquorice.”

- 264 “Beautyberry” (*Callicarpa macrophylla* Vahl.) is one identification of श्यामा, but vaidyas and commentators have different ideas about the plant’s identity (see glossary). On translating इन्द्रगोप as “velvet-mite,” see Lienhard 1978. Ḍalhaṇa’s remarks show that he had a reading इन्द्रगोपा before him, and he tries to explain इन्द्रा and गोपा as separate plants. But he also says that some people read इन्द्रगोप.

Ḍalhaṇa curiously parsed the name सोमा (f.) out of the compound; this feminine noun is almost unknown to Ayurvedic literature. Some dictionaries and commentators consider it a synonym for गुडूची, others for ब्राह्मी or चन्द्रतरु. Ḍalhaṇa also mentioned that some people think the word refers to the soma creeper (सोमलता), which might explain his choice to take the word as feminine. But the compounded word is far more likely to be सोम (m.), the well-known mystery plant (see Wujastyk 2003b: 76–78, 125). If this can be taken as rue (*Ruta graveolens*, L.), as some assert, one can point to a pleasing passage in Dioscorides where rue plays an antitoxic role: “...it is a counterpoison of serpents, the stinging of Scorpions, Bees, Hornets and Wasps; and it is reported that if a man be anointed with the juice of the Rue, these will not hurt him; and that the serpent is driven away at the smell thereof when it is burned; insomuch that when the weasel is to fight with the serpent she armeth herself by eating Rue, against the might of the serpent” (cited from Potter: 262; not found in Osbaldeston and Wood 2000).

- 265 The word अष्टीला is normally feminine. The Nepalese manuscripts read it with a short अ- ending. Gayadāsa noticed that some manuscripts read अष्टील with a short -अ ending (MS Bikaner RORI 5157, f. 5v:7–8) and Ḍalhaṇa reproduced his observation. The vulgate reading “from his mouth (चास्यात्)” is more obvious (*lectio faciliior*), but is not attested in the Nepalese manuscripts.

- 266 Poisoned toothbrushes are discussed in verses 48 ff. below.

- 267 I translate मूर्च्छा in the light of the metaphors discussed by Meulenbeld (2011), that include thickening and losing consciousness.

- milk, or alternatively with rice-water.
- 42 Reaching the intestines (पक्काशय), it causes a burning feeling, stupor, diarrhoea, thirst, impairment of the senses, flatulence (आटोप) and it makes him pallid and thin.
- 43 In such a case, purgation with the fruit of indigo (नीली), together with ghee, is best. And ‘slow-acting poison antidote (दूषीविषारि)’ should be drunk with honey and curds (दधि).<sup>268</sup>
- 44 When poison is in any liquid substances such as milk, wine or water, there are various streaks, and foam and bubbles form.
- 45 And no reflections are visible or, however, if they can be seen once more, they are distorted, fractured, or tenuous and distorted too.<sup>269</sup>
- 46 Vegetables, soups, food and meat are soggy and tasteless. They seem to go stale suddenly, and they have no aroma.
- 47 All edibles lack aroma, colour or taste. Ripe fruits rapidly rot (प्र√कुथ्) and unripe ones ripen.<sup>270</sup>
- 48 When a toothbrush twig has poison on it, the bristles are corroded and the flesh of the tongue, gums and lips swells up.<sup>271</sup>
- 49 Then, once his swelling is lanced, one should rub (प्रतिसारण) it with fire-flame bush flowers jambul, mango stones and chebulic myrobalan fruit mixed with honey.<sup>272</sup>
- 50 Alternatively, the rubbing (प्रतिसारण) can be done with either the roots of sage-leaved alangium, the bark of blackboard tree or siris seeds.<sup>273</sup>

I'm still unhappy about this verse.

Mention this in the introduction as an example of the scribe knowing the vulgate.

fn about sadyas+

268 The ‘slow-acting poison’ is discussed at 5.2.25 ff. (Su 1938: 565).

269 Both Nepalese witnesses read विकृत (distorted) twice, which is tautologous. In the first occurrence both read विकृता without proper termination. One might read the sandhi in the second occurrence as or not distorted (वाविकृता), but this gives no better sense. The scribe of MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333, apparently the original hand, added in the margin the alternate reading “double (यमला)” as in the vulgate. Perhaps the scribe too was troubled by the tautology. It is also evidence that he was aware of a witness with variant readings similar to the vulgate. We emend for grammar but retain the *lectio difficilior*.

270 The root √कुथ् “stink, putrify, rot” is apparently known only from its few uses in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*.

271 Gayadāsa and Ḍalhaṇa pointed out that “tooth socket (दन्तवेष्ट)” and “gum (दन्तमांस)” have the same meaning (2.16.14–26 (Su 1938: 331–332)).

272 This recipe is different from the vulgate.

273 The spelling of the name अङ्गोल्ल varies अङ्गोट, अङ्गोठ, अङ्गोल (GVDB: 5); Ḍalhaṇa noted that the form अङ्गोल्ल is a colloquialism (1.37.12 (Su 1938: 161)). The sentence is awkward and we have emended शिरीषमाषक to be a plural, as in the vulgate, rather than the ablative singular of the Nepalese witnesses. We follow Ḍalhaṇa in interpreting the

- 51ab One should give advice about a poisoned tongue-scraper or mouth-wash (कवल) in the same way as for a toothbrush twig.
- 51cd Massage oil that has been laced with poison is slimy, thick and discoloured.
- 52 When the massage oil has been contaminated with poison, boils arise, pain, a discharge (साव), inflammation of the skin, and sweating.<sup>274</sup> And the flesh splits open.
- 53–54 In such a case, sandalwood, crape jasmine, costus, and cuscus grass, bamboo leaves, heart-leaved moonseed and heart-leaved moonseed, white clitoria, sacred lotus, and Indian barberry should be made into an ointment (अनुलेपन) for the patient, who has been sprinkled with cold water. That is also recommended as a drink with the juice and leaves of wood apple.<sup>275</sup>
- 55 In the case of a dry rub (उत्सादन), a shower (परीषेक), an infusion, a massage ointment (अनुलेपन), or in beds, clothes, or armour, the physician should understand that it is the same as for oil massage (अभ्यङ्ग).<sup>276</sup>
- 56–58 When a comb has poison in it, the hair falls out, the head aches and blood oozes from the follicles (ख) and lumps (ग्रन्थि) appear on the head. In such a case, one should repeatedly apply an ointment of black earth soaked with bear's bile,<sup>277</sup> ghee, beautyberry,<sup>278</sup> black creeper, and amaranth. Good alternatives are either the fluid extract of cow-dung, or the juice of jasmine, the juice of woodrose, or household soot.<sup>279</sup>
- 59 If either massage oil for the head, or a helmet for the head, in a wash,

Bear's bile  
instead of  
deer's bile.

compound to refer to the distinctive bean-like siris seeds, rather than to mung beans (5.1.50 (Su 1938: 562)).

274 The feminine स्फोट for “boils” is unattested.

275 This compound could be interpreted as “wood apple juice and cassia cinnamon.” Note that this recipe is differs from that of the vulgate, which requires urine.

276 See verse 52 above.

277 Dalhāṇa comments here that ‘bile is that fluid which goes along inside the tube attached to the liver’ (कालखण्डलग्ननलिकामध्यगतजलं पित्तम्) 5.1.57 (Su 1938: 562).

278 See note 264.

279 The plant identifications in this passage follow Dalhāṇa’s glosses, although he noted a difference of opinion on the identity of woodrose (lit. “mouse-ear”).

The expression धूमो वागारसंज्ञितः ‘...or the smoke termed “house”’ is commonly interpreted by translators and in Ayurvedic dictionaries as ‘household soot,’ and this does seem to be the meaning, in context. The term was comprehensively discussed by Meulenbeld (2008: 443). Cf. note 373, p. 117.

turban, or garlands that are contaminated with poison, then one should treat it in the same way as a comb.

- 60–61 When face make-up is poisoned, the face becomes dark and has the symptoms found with poisoned massage oil. It is covered with spots (कण्टक) that are like lotus-spots (पद्मिनीकण्टक).<sup>280</sup> In this case, the drink is honey and ghee, and the ointment (प्रलेप) is sandalwood with ghee, curds, honey, *verbena*, *scarlet mallow* and *hogweed*.<sup>281</sup>
- 62–63ab Elephants and the like become ill and they dribble saliva. And the rider gets spots (स्फोट) and a discharge on his scrotum, penis, and rectum. In this case, one prescribes the same therapy as for poisoned massage oil for both the rider and the mount.
- 63cd–65ab When there is poison in snuff (नस्य) or smoke, the symptom (लिङ्ग) is blood coming out of the apertures of the head (ख), a headache, a flow of mucus (कफ) and impairment of the senses. In such a case, ghee of cows etc., boiled up with their milk and *Himalayan monkshood*, is prescribed, with *henna*, as a cold drink or er-rhine.
- 65cd–66 Flowers lose their fragrance and colour, and wilt. On smelling them, he gets a headache and his eyes fill with water. In this case, the treatment is what was proposed above for vapour (बाष्प) and that which is traditional for face make-up.
- 67–68 When it is in ear-oil, there is degeneration in the ear, and painful swelling. There is also a discharge from the ear and in such a case it needs to be irrigated (प्रतिपूरण) promptly with ghee and honey. Extracted juice (स्वरस) of *wild asparagus* and very cold juice of *white cutch tree* are also recommended as something good.<sup>282</sup>
- 69 When poison is mixed in with eye make-up (अञ्जन), he gets tears and rheum (उपदेह), with a burning feeling, pain, faulty vision (दृष्टिविभ्रम), and possibly even blindness.<sup>283</sup>

punarnavā  
in the N &  
K MSS

śrita for  
śṛta

explain  
more

280 See the description of this condition at 2.13.40 (Su 1938: 323), where the skin on the face is characterized as having pale circular patches that are itchy and have spots.

281 The common plant-name पुनर्नवा is read as पुनर्णवा in both Nepalese witnesses. This unusual form is technically-speaking legal according to Pāṇini 8.4.3, but is not attested in published texts. पुनर्णवा is found rarely in some other Nepalese manuscripts such as the *Brahmayāmala* (a.k.a. *Picumata*, 44.81, transcription thanks to Shaman Hatley), and elsewhere (e.g., in Gaṇapatiśāstrī 1920–25: 20, where it is the name of a constellation).

282 The syntax of the Nepalese version is slightly unclear, but the vulgate has smoothed out the difficulties.

283 The term translated as “faulty vision” could also mean “rolling eyes.” “Eye make-up”

Medical difference from Sharma.

example where the vulgate clarifies that these should be used separately; appears to be a gloss inserted into the vulgate text.

The two uses of prāpta are hard to translate. prāptāh → kṣiprām is an example of the vulgate banalizing the Sanskrit text to make sense of a difficult passage.

√ vyadh not √ vedh (also elsewhere and for the ears), causative optative.

70–71 In this case, one must immediately drink ghee and have it also in an eyewash (तर्पण) with long pepper. One should have an eye ointment (अञ्जन) of the juice of periploca of the woods and have the extract (निर्यास) of three-leaved caper, wood apple and periploca of the woods and the flower of marking-nut tree.

72–73 Because of poisoned slippers there will definitely be a swelling, numbness (स्वाप), a discharge (स्राव) and an outbreak of spots (स्फोट) on the feet. One should clean (प्र/साध्) footstools together with slippers.

74 Ornaments lose their lustre, and they do not shine as they used to. They damage their respective locations with burning, sepsis (पाक), and fisting (अवदारण).<sup>284</sup>

75ab One should apply the stated procedure for massage oil (अभ्यङ्ग) to poisoned slippers and ornaments.

75cd–76 In the case of the affliction (उपसर्ग) by poison which has been described above, starting from ‘vapour’ and ending with ‘ornaments,’ the physician should observe the side-effects (उपद्रव) and then prescribe the therapy called the Great Fragrance (महासुगन्ध) antidote, which I shall describe.<sup>285</sup>

77–78ab He should prescribe it in drinks, liniments (आलेपन), errhines (नस्य), and in eye ointment (अञ्जन). Also, he should use sharp purgatives and emetics. If bleeding is present, he should have the indicated veins pierced.

78cd–79ab If either purging nut or a fern is tied on to the King’s wrist, then all food that is mixed with poison will be rendered free of poison.<sup>286</sup>

79cd–80 He should always guard his heart when amongst people who are not

is normally made of Indian barberry.

284 The reading अवदारण in MS Kathmandu KL 699 is not attested elsewhere in Sanskrit literature. On “sepsis” for पाक, see Wujastyk 2003b: xlv–xlvi.

285 This antidote is indeed described later, in dramatic terms, at 5.6.14–27 (Su 1938: 581). A recipe with eighty-five ingredients including cow’s bile, it is praised as chief of all antidotes, one that can drag the patient back from the very jaws of death, from even the poisonous fangs of Vāsuki.

286 In early Ayurvedic literature, the plant अजरुहा is mentioned only here and its identity is unknown. It may be a fern of the Nephrodium family, according to T. B. Singh and Chuneekar (GVDB: 7). Ḍalhaṇa, on 5.1.78 (Su 1938: 563), cited a description of the two plants from the little-known authority Uśanas (HIML: IA, 660 et passim) who described अजरुहा as a white root with spots on it that looks like collyrium when it is split; when drunk with sandalwood it causes poison to be digested.



- his friends.<sup>287</sup> Before eating, he should drink the kinds of ghee called “Invincible” and “Immortal”.<sup>288</sup> He should drink ghee (सर्पिष्), honey, curds (दधि), milk (पयस्), or cold water.
- 81 He should consume monitor lizard, peacock, mongoose, chital deer, and blackbuck too, that destroy poison, and their juices.
- 82 As discerning person should add well-crushed black creeper,<sup>289</sup> liquorice, and sugar to the meats of monitor lizard, mongoose and blackbuck too.
- 83 Add sugar and Himalayan monkshood to peacock flesh, together with ginger. And for meat from a chital deer, he should add long pepper, with ginger.
- 84ab A cold neem broth with honey and ghee is wholesome too.
- 84cd A discerning person should partake of hard and soft foods that counteract poison.<sup>290</sup>
- 85 If poison might have been drunk, a person who has protected his heart should make himself vomit using long pepper, liquorice, honey, sugar, sugar cane juice, and water.

The first chapter in the Kalpas.

<sup>287</sup> The *Carakasamhitā* described “protecting the heart” (हृदयावरण) as drinking several sweet, oily drinks to surround the heart and keep it safe (6.23.46 (Ca 1941: 574)). Ḍalhaṇa on 5.1.79–81 (Su 1938: 563) explained it as taking a number of anti-toxic medicines, including those listed in the present passage, in order to cover or hide (प्रच्छादन) the heart. Note that the Nepalese version reads the opposite of the vulgate: one should guard one’s heart when amongst enemies, not friends. This is far more logical; it is also the reading known to the 1.8.89a (As 1980: 79).

<sup>288</sup> These ghee compounds are described in later chapters: see 5.2.47–49 (Su 1938: 566) and 5.6.13 (Su 1938: 581).

<sup>289</sup> Ḍalhaṇa on 5.1.82 (Su 1938: 563) equated this with turpeth.

<sup>290</sup> On this expression, see Yagi 1994.





# Kalpasthāna 2: Poisonous Plants

## Introduction

This section begins with several lists of poisonous plants. The Sanskrit names for these plants are mostly not standard or familiar from anywhere in Sanskrit or ethnobotanical literature. It remains a historical puzzle why these particular names are so difficult to interpret. However, we are not the first to encounter these difficulties. In the twelfth century, the learned commentator on the text, Ḍalhaṇa, remarked,

In spite of having made the greatest effort, it has been impossible to identify these plants. In the Himalayan regions, Kirātas and Śabarās are able to identify them.<sup>291</sup>

Ḍalhaṇa also recorded variant readings of these poison names from the manuscripts that he consulted of the lost commentary of Gayadāsa (fl. c. CE 1000). The identities of these poisons have been in doubt for at least a thousand years.<sup>292</sup> Identifications have in many cases been equally impossible for us today.

One path for exploration in this situation is to attempt to reverse-engineer some identifications by considering the known toxic plants of India.<sup>293</sup>

---

<sup>291</sup> After *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, *kalpasthāna* 2.5 (Su 1938: 564). From the view of Sanskrit authors, Kirātas and Śabarās were tribal peoples. The eleventh-century author Bhikṣu Govinda, however, cast his treatise as a dialogue with a Kirāṭa king called Madana who was a master of the alchemical art (HIML: IIA, 620).

<sup>292</sup> See Wujastyk 2003b: 80–81.

<sup>293</sup> Valuable reference sources on Indian plant toxicology in general include Pillay 2013: chs. 10, 11 and Barceloux 2008: parts 1.II, 3 and 4.

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>294</sup>

## Translation

- 1 And now I shall explain **what should be known** about stationary poisons.<sup>295</sup>
- 3 It is said that there are two kinds of poisons, stationary (स्थावर) and mobile (जङ्गम). The former dwells in ten sites, the latter in sixteen places.
- 4 Traditionally, the ten are: root, leaf, fruit, flower, bark, milky sap (क्षीर), pith (सार), resin (निर्यास), the elements (*dhātu*), and the tuber.
- 5 In that context,
  - the eight root-poisons are:<sup>296</sup>
    1. liquorice (?),<sup>297</sup>
    2. sweet-scented oleander,<sup>298</sup>
    3. jequirity,<sup>299</sup>
    4. false daisy,<sup>300</sup>

<sup>294</sup> HIMAL: IA, 290–291.

<sup>295</sup> No reference is made to Dhanvantari (see Birch, Wujastyk, Klebanov, Parameswaran, et al. 2021). “Stationary” here is a term contrasted with “moving,” and signifies plants as opposed to animals and insects.

<sup>296</sup> Some South Asian plants with poisonous roots that we would have expected to see in this list include *Croton tiglium*, L., *Calotropis* spp., *Citrullus colocynthus* L. Schrad., and *Ricinus communis* L. (CIPP).

<sup>297</sup> Liquorice eaten in excess can be poisonous, but it is unlikely to be the plant intended here. T. B. Singh and Chuneekar (GVDB: 124) noted that the poisonous root mentioned in this passage, “remains to be identified.”

<sup>298</sup> The roots of sweet-scented oleander are highly toxic, as are most parts of the plant (Pillay and Sasidharan 2019).

<sup>299</sup> Jequirity contains a dangerous toxin called Abrin in its seeds and to a lesser extent in its leaves, but apparently not in its roots or bulb. Abrin is not harmful if eaten, but an infusion of the bruised (not boiled) seeds injected or rubbed in the eyes can be fatal (NK: # 6). The dose can be quite small.

<sup>300</sup> The plant is usually called just *bhaṅgurā* without the prefix *su-* “good.” However, there is no reported toxicity associated with *E. prostrata*. The vulgate reads सुगन्धा (snakeroot).

5. (?),<sup>301</sup> and ending with
  6. ??,<sup>302</sup>
  7. country sarsaparilla (?),<sup>303</sup> and
  8. medhshingi,<sup>304</sup>
- the leaf-poisons include:
    - aconite leaf (?),
    - drum-giver (?),
    - thorn apple, and
    - big thorn apple;
  - the fruits of items like: jequirity, marking-nut tree, and poison-altar (?) are
    - kumudavati (*kumadavati*)<sup>i</sup>,
    - reṇuka (?)<sup>ii</sup>,
    - kurūkaka (?)<sup>iii</sup>,
    - 'little bamboo' (*veṇuka*)<sup>iv</sup>,<sup>305</sup>,

301 This poisonous root cannot at present be securely identified. Similar-sounding candidates include *karkaṭaka*, *karahāṭa* (emetic nut), and *karaghāṭa*, but since this is a prose passage, there would be no reason to alter the word to fit a metre. Monier-Williams et al. (MW: 255) cite an unknown lexical source that equates *karāṭa* (mn.) with safflower (*Carthamus tinctorius*, L.), but this plant does not have a poisonous root.

302 The roots of both rose and white leadwort are very toxic.

303 The text reads masculine *ananta*, which is not a plant name. Gayī's commentary on 5.2.5 (Su 1938: 564) noted a variant reading of feminine *anantā* in place of *gargaraka*, earlier in the compound. But the feminine *anantā*, country sarsaparilla, is not a poisonous plant.

304 Meulenbeld (1989: 61, n. 3) argued that our text reads a masculine or neuter noun *vijaya*, which never signifies cannabis. However, unlike the vulgate, the unanimous readings of the Nepalese manuscripts give feminine *vijayā*. Nevertheless, even the feminine form only started to signify *Cannabis sativa* L. after the end of the first millennium (mchu-2021a; Meulenbeld 1989; Wujastyk 2002). The *Sauśrutaniḥṣaṇṭu* gives a number of synonyms for *vijayā*, almost none of which have any poisonous parts (Suvedī and Tivārī 2000: 5.77, 10.143). But one of them, *viṣāṇī* (also *meṣaśṛṅgī*), is sometimes equated with *Dolichandrone falcata* (DC.) Seemann (ADPS: 518), a plant used as an abortifacient and fish poison (nadk-1982). This identification is tenuous.

305 Not poisonous.

i unknown; see ?

ii ?; see *Piper aurantiacum* Wall. (NK: #1924) is not poisonous.

iii ?; see ?

iv *Bambusa bambos*, Druce?; see NK #307

- thorn apple (*karambha*)<sup>v</sup>,
- 'big thorn apple' (*mahākarambha*)<sup>vi</sup>,
- 'pleaser' (*nandanā*)<sup>vii</sup>,
- 'crow' (*kāka*)<sup>viii</sup>,
- the flower-poisons include those of:
  - rattan (*vetra*)<sup>ix</sup>,
  - wild chinchona (*kādamba*)<sup>x</sup>,
  - black pepper (*vallīja* → *marica*)<sup>xi</sup>,
  - thorn apple (*karambha*)<sup>xii</sup>, and
  - big thorn apple (*mahākarambha*)<sup>xiii</sup>;
- the seven bark, pith (सार) and resin (निर्यास) poisons are:
  - 'gutboiler' (*antrapācaka*)<sup>xiv</sup>,
  - 'blade' (*kartarīya*)<sup>xv</sup>,
  - wild mustard (*saurīyaka*)<sup>xvi</sup>,
  - emetic nut (*karaghāṭa* → *karahāṭa?* → *madana*)<sup>xvii</sup>,
  - thorn apple (*karambha*)<sup>xviii</sup>,
  - wild asparagus (*nandana* → *bahuputrā?*)<sup>xix</sup>, and

v *Datura metel*, L.; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

vi *Datura metel*, L.?; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

vii ?; see ?

viii ?; see ?

ix *Calamus rotang*, L.; see AVS 1.330, NK #413

x *Anthocephalus cadamba*, Miq.; see NK #204

xi *Piper nigrum*, L.?; see NK #1929; Rā.6.115, Dha.4.85, Dha.2.88

xii *Datura metel*, L.; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

xiii *Datura metel*, L.?; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

xiv unknown; see ?

xv unknown; see ?

xvi *Cleome viscosa*, L.? (cf. Rā.4.144); see AVS 2.116, NK #615

xvii *Randia dumetorum*, Lamk.; see NK #2091

xviii *Datura metel*, L.; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

xix *Asparagus racemosus*, Willd.; see ADPS 441, AVS 1.218, NK #264, IGP 103, IMP 4.2499ff., Dymock 482ff.

- munj grass (*nārācaka*)<sup>xx,306</sup>
- the three milky sap (क्षीर)-poisons are:
  - purple calotropis (*kumudaghnī* → *arka?*)<sup>xxi,307</sup>
  - oleander spurge (*snuhī*)<sup>xxii</sup>, and
  - ‘web-milk’ (*jālakṣīri*)<sup>xxiii</sup>;
- the two element (धातु)-poisons are:
  - ‘foam-stone’ (*phenāśma*)<sup>xxiv</sup>, and
  - orpiment (*haritāla*)<sup>xxv,308</sup>
- the thirteen tuber-poisons are:
  - jequirity (*kālakūṭa*)<sup>xxvi,309</sup>
  - wolfsbane (*vatsanābha*)<sup>xxvii</sup>,

306 The bark of wild asparagus (*Asparagus racemosus*, Willd.) is toxic.

307 The name of this poison, *kumuda-ghnī*, means ‘lotus killer’. In Sanskrit literature, the *kumuda* lotus is associated with the moon, since it blossoms by night. Since the sun causes this lotus to close, it is therefore an ‘enemy’ of the lotus. One of the chief words for the sun, *arka*, is also the name of *Calotropis gigantea*, which indeed has a milky juice which is a violent purgative, poison and abortifacient.

308 Dutt (Dutt: 38–42) conjectured that ‘foam-stone’ may be impure white arsenic obtained by roasting orpiment.

309 The much later (perhaps sixteenth century) alchemical *Rasaratnasamuccaya* of pseudo-Vāgbhaṭa (21.14) says that the *kālakūṭa* poison, here translated as ‘jequirity’, is similar to ‘*kākacañcu*’ or ‘Crow’s Beak’, which is indeed a name for the plant jequirity or *Abrus precatorius*, L., more commonly called *guñjā* (not to be confused with *gañjā*). The black seed-pod is described as having a ‘sharp deflexed beak’ in botanical descriptions, so the Sanskrit name is quite graphic and appropriate. The poisonous scarlet seeds of *A. precatorius* can have a distinct black dot or tip, which could perhaps be translated ‘*kāla-kūṭa*’, or ‘Black Tip’.

The *Rājaniḥṣaṇṭupariśiṣṭa* (9.35) gives *kālakūṭaka* as a synonym for *kāraskara*, or *Strychnos nux-vomica*, L., whose seeds are notoriously poisonous.

xx *Saccharum bengalense*, Retz.?; see NK #2184

xxi *Calotropis gigantea*, (L.) R. Br.; see ADPS 52, AVS 1.341, NK #427, Potter 63

xxii *Euphorbia neriifolia*, L., or *E. antiquorum*, L.; see ADPS 448, AVS (2.388), 3.1, NK #988, IGP 457b

xxiii unknown; see ?

xxiv unknown; see ?

xxv *Arsenii trisulphidum*; see NK v. 2, p. 20 ff.

xxvi *Abrus precatorius*, L.? Cf. RRS 21.14.; see AVS 1.10, NK #6, Potter 168.

xxvii *Aconitum napellus*, L.; see AVS 1.47, NK #42, Potter 4 f.

- Indian mustard (*sarṣapa*)<sup>xxviii</sup>,
- leadwort (*pālaka* → *citraka*)<sup>xxix</sup>,
- ‘muddy’ (*kardama*)<sup>xxx</sup>, the
- ‘Virāṭa’s plant’ (*vairātaka*)<sup>xxxi</sup>,
- nutgrass (*mustaka*)<sup>xxxii</sup>,
- atis root (*śṛṅgīviṣa*)<sup>xxxiii</sup>,
- sacred lotus (*prapuṇḍarīka*)<sup>xxxiv</sup>,
- radish (*mūlaka*)<sup>xxxv</sup>,
- ‘alas, alas’ (*hālāhala*)<sup>xxxvi</sup>,
- ‘big poison’ (*mahāviṣa*)<sup>xxxvii</sup>, and
- galls (*karkaṭa*)<sup>xxxviii</sup>.<sup>310</sup>

Thus, there are fifty-five stationary poisons.

- 6 There are believed to be four kinds of wolfsbane, two kinds of *mustaka*, and six kinds of Indian *sarṣapa*. But the rest are said to be unique types.

## The effects of poisons

- 7–10 People should know that root-poisons cause writhing (उद्धेष्टन), ranting (प्रलाप), and delirium (मोह), and leaf-poisons cause yawning, writhing,

310 Leadwort root is a powerful poison. Nutgrass is tuberous, but non-toxic. Atis has highly toxic tuberous roots. Neither sacred lotus nor galls are toxic. The ‘alas, alas’ poison (*hālāhala*) is the mythical poison produced from the churning of the ocean at the time of creation: it occurs in medical texts such as the present one, and commentators identify it with one or other of the lethal poisons such as wolfsbane or jequirity. Agrawal (1963: 126) makes the intriguing suggestion that the word *hālāhala*, possibly to be identified with Pāṇini’s *hailihila* (P.6.2.38), may be of Semitic origin, although his evidence seems uncertain (Steingass (1930: 1506a) cites Persian *halāhil* ‘deadly (poison)’ as a loan from Sanskrit). KEWA: iii.585 also cites a claim for an Austro-Asiatic origin for the word.

xxvi *Brassica juncea*, Czern. & Coss.; see AVS 1.301, NK #378

xxix *Plumbago zeylanica* (indica? rosea?), L.; see Rā. 6.124, ADPS 119, NK #1966, 1967

xxx unknown; see ?

xxxi unknown; see ?

xxxii *Cyperus rotundus*, L.; see ADPS 316, AVS 2.296, NK #782

xxxiii *Aconitum heterophyllum*, Wall. ex Royle; see AVS 1.42, NK #39

xxxiv *Nelumbo nucifera*, Gaertn.; see Dutt 110, NK #1698

xxxv *Raphanus sativus*, L.; see NK #2098

xxxvi unknown; see Cf. *Soḍhalanighantu* p.43 (sub bola) = stomaka = vatsanābha

xxxvii unknown; see ?

xxxviii *Rhus succedanea*, L.; see NK #2136

and wheezing (श्वास).

Fruit-poisons cause swelling of the scrotum, a burning feeling and writhing. Flower-poisons will cause vomiting, distension (आध्मान) and sleep (स्वाप).

The consumption of poisons from bark, pith (सार) and resin (निर्यास) will cause foul breath, hoarseness (पारुष्य), a headache, and a discharge of phlegm (कफ).<sup>311</sup>

The milky sap (क्षीर)-poisons make one froth at the mouth, cause loose stool, and make the tongue feel heavy.<sup>312</sup> The element (धातु)-poisons give one a crushing pain in the chest, make one faint and cause a burning feeling on the palate.

These poisons are classified as ones which are generally speaking lethal after a period of time.

#### 11–17 Symptoms of tuber poisoning

The tuber-poisons, though, are severe. I shall talk about them in detail. With jequirity (*kālakūṭa*)<sup>xxxix</sup>, there is numbness and very severe trembling. With wolfsbane (*vatsanābha*)<sup>xl</sup>, there is rigidity of the neck, and the faeces, and urine become yellow.

With *sārṣapa* (सार्षप),<sup>313</sup> the wind becomes defective (*vātavaiguṇya*), there is constipation (आनाह), and lumps (ग्रन्थि) start to appear. With leadwort (*pālaka* → *citraka*)<sup>xli</sup>, there is weakness in the neck, and speech gets jumbled.<sup>314</sup>

311 At 1.2.6 (Su 1938: 11), Ḍalhaṇa glosses hoarseness (पारुष्य) as *vāgrūkṣatā*, “a rough, dry voice.”

312 At 6.54.10 (Su 1938: 773), Ḍalhaṇa glosses loose stool (विद्धेद) as *dravapurīṣatā*, “having liquid stool.”

313 *Sārṣapa* would normally mean “connected with mustard,” and excessive consumption of mustard oil can be harmful. However, the *Sauśrutaniḥṣaṇṭu* (156) gives *rakṣoghṇā* as a synonym for *sārṣapā*. This can be *Semecarpus anacardium*, L.f., which has some poisonous parts.

314 The verse in the Nepalese version ends with a plural verb that does not agree with the dual of the sentence subject.

xxxix *Abrus precatorius*, L.? Cf. RRS 21.14.; see AVS 1.10, NK #6, Potter 168.

xl *Aconitum napellus*, L.; see AVS 1.47, NK #38, Potter 4 f.

xli *Plumbago zeylanica* (indica? rosea?), L.; see Rā. 6.124, ADPS 119, NK #1966, 1967

With the one called ‘muddy’ (*kardama*)<sup>xlii</sup>, there is a discharge (प्रसेक), the faeces pour out, and the eyes turn yellow. The ‘Virāṭa’s plant’ (*vairāṭaka*)<sup>xliii</sup> causes pain in the body and illness in the head. Paralysis of one’s arms and legs and trembling are said to be caused by mustaka (मुस्तक).<sup>315</sup>

-> ativiṣa

15b With great aconite (महाविष) one’s limbs grow weak, there is a burning feeling and swelling of the belly.<sup>316</sup>

Look up  
the ca. ref-  
erence.

16a With puṇḍarīka (पुण्डरीक), one’s eyes go red, and one’s belly becomes distended.<sup>317</sup>

16b With mūlaka (मूलक), one’s body is drained of colour and the limbs are paralysed.<sup>318</sup>

17a With hālāhala (अचोनिते), a man turns a dark colour (ध्याम), and gasps.<sup>319</sup>

17b With atis root (śṛṅgīviṣa)<sup>xliv</sup>, one gets violent knots (ग्रन्थि) and stabbing pains in the heart.<sup>320</sup>

18a With markāṭa (मोन्केय्), one leaps up, laughs, and bites.<sup>321</sup>

315 The substitution in MS NAK 5-333 affecting 15cd is caused by an eye-skip to the word *viṣeṇa* in 2.17. *Mustaka* commonly refers to *Cyperus rotundus*, L.; the root is used in āyurveda but is not poisonous. However other dictionaries list *mustaka* amongst serious poisons, for example *Rājanighaṇṭu* (22 v. 42) and *Rasaratnasamuccaya* 16, v. 80. However, its ancient identity is still doubtful.

316 The poisonous root great poison (महाविष) is not clearly identifiable, although *viṣa* is commonly aconite. Verse 6 above notes that there are several kinds of aconite.

317 The word *puṇḍarīka* very commonly means sacred lotus, *Nelumbo nucifera*, Gaertn. The entire plant is edible and cannot be the poison intended here. T. B. Singh and Chunekar (GVDB: 252) noted that this poison is unidentified and that it is also listed as a poison in *Carakasamhitā*ci.23.12.

318 The word *mūlaka* very commonly means the radish, *Raphanus sativus*, L. The root is edible and cannot be the poison intended here. T. B. Singh and Chunekar (GVDB: 317) noted that this poison is unidentified.

319 Identification of *hālāhala* is uncertain. It may simply be a mythical poison, or its specific identity may have been lost over the centuries. Late *nighaṇṭus* identify it as *stomaka* = *vatsanābha*, i.e., *Aconitum napellus*, L. (*Soḍhalanighaṇṭu* p.43). Ḍalhaṇa on 5.2.17 (Su 1938: 564) interprets our “gasps” as “the man laughs and grinds his teeth.” But this gloss is probably displaced and intended to apply to verse 2.18.

320 T. B. Singh and Chunekar (GVDB: 407) noted that *vatsanābha* and *śṛṅgīviṣa* are two different varieties of poisonous Aconites that are difficult to distinguish.

321 T. B. Singh and Chunekar (GVDB: 299) said of *markāṭa*, “an unidentified vegetable

xlii unknown; see ?

xliii unknown; see ?

xliv *Aconitum heterophyllum*, Wall. ex Royle; see AVS 1.42, NK #39



- 18b-19a Experts have said that one should know that the thirteen highly potent tuber-poisons, which are mentioned here, have ten qualities (गुण).
- 19b-20a The ten are:
- dry (रूक्ष),
  - hot,
  - sharp,
  - rarified (सूक्ष्म),
  - fast-acting,
  - pervasive (व्यवायिन्),
  - expansive (विकासिन्),
  - limpid (विशद),
  - light, and
  - indigestible.
- 20b Because of dryness, it may cause inflammation of the wind; because of heat it inflames the choler and blood. Because of the sharpness it unhinges the mind, and it cuts through the connections with the sensitive points (*marman*). Because it is rarified it can infiltrate and distort the parts of the body.<sup>322</sup>
- 22 Because it is fast-acting it kills quickly, and because of its pervasiveness it affects one's whole physical constitution (*prakṛti*).<sup>323</sup> Because of its expansiveness it enters into the humour (दोष)s, bodily constituents (धातु)s, and even the impurities. Because it is limpid it overflows, and because it is light it is difficult to treat. Because it is indigestible it is hard to eliminate. Therefore, it causes suffering for a long time.
- 24 Any poison that is instantly lethal, whether it be stationary, mobile, or artificial, will be known to have all ten of these qualities.

### Slow-acting poison

- 25cd-26 A poison that is old or destroyed by anti-toxic medicines, or else dried up by blazing fire, wind, or sunshine, or which has just lost its qualities

poison." Cf. Suvedī and Tivārī 2000: v.36 for synonyms that lead to the non-toxic jujube tree.

322 We read the active *vikaroti* with Ḍalhaṇa against the transmitted passive *vikriyeta*, since it must be the parts of the body that are distorted, not the poison.

323 Ḍalhaṇa on 5.2.22 (Su 1938: 565) explained this as "takes the form of pervading the whole body (अखिलदेहव्याप्तिरूपम्)."

- by itself,<sup>324</sup> becomes a slow-acting poison (*dūṣīviṣa*).<sup>325</sup> Because it has lost its potency it is no longer perceived. Because it is surrounded by phlegm (कफ) it has an aftermath that lasts for a very long time.
- 27 If he is suffering from this, the colour of his stools changes, he gets sourness and a bad taste with great thirst. Stammering and close to death, wandering about, he may feel faint, giddy, and aroused.<sup>326</sup>
- 28 If it lodges in his stomach (आमाशय), he becomes sick because of wind and phlegm; if it lodges in his intestines (पक्वाशय), he becomes sick because of wind and choler. A man's hair and limbs fall away and he looks like a bird whose wings have been chopped off.
- 29a–c If it lodges in one of the body tissues such as chyle (रस), it causes the diseases arising from the body tissues, that have been said to be wrong.<sup>327</sup> and it rapidly becomes inflamed on days that are nasty because of cold and wind.
- 29d–31 Listen to its initial symptoms (लिङ्ग): it causes heaviness due to sleep, yawning, disjunction (विश्लेष) and horripilation (हर्ष) and a bruising of the limbs (अङ्गमर्द).<sup>328</sup> Next, it causes intoxication from food (अन्नमद) and indigestion, loss of appetite (अरोचक), the condition of having a skin disease (कोठ) with round blotches (मण्डल),<sup>329</sup> **dwindling away (क्षय) of flesh**, swelling of the feet, hands, and face, **the fever called *pralepaka***, vomiting and diarrhoea.<sup>330</sup> The slow-acting poison might cause **wheezing, thirst and fever, and it might also cause distension of the abdomen**.
- 32 These various disorders are of many different types: one poison may produce madness, while another one may cause constipation (आनाह), and yet another may ruin the semen. One may cause **emaciation**, while another pallid skin disease (कुष्ठ).

324 Ḍalhaṇa specified that this refers to the ten qualities that are mentioned above (5.2.26 (Su 1938: 565)).

325 Ḍalhaṇa cited this verse at 1.46.83 (Su 1938: 222) while explaining *dūṣīviṣa*.

326 Similar symptoms of slow-acting poison are described at 2.7.11–13 (Su 1938: 296) in the context of contamination dropsy (दुष्योदर). This this may explain why the vulgate inserted reference to this disease at this point.

327 The expression *ayathāyathoktān* “stated to be unsuitable” is hard to understand here, but is clearly transmitted in the Nepalese version.

328 Ḍalhaṇa 5.2.30ab (Su 1938: 565) glossed “disjunction” as the loss of function of the joints in regard to movement.

329 The last ailment could perhaps be ringworm.

330 The *pralepaka* fever was described by Ḍalhaṇa, at 6.39.52 (Su 1938: 675), as an accumulation of phlegm in the joints. Its symptoms are described in 6.39.54

- 33 Something is “corrupted” by repetitively keeping to bad locations, times, foods, and sleeping in the daytime. Or, traditionally, “corrupting poison” (slow-acting poison (दूषी-विष)) is so called because it may corrupt (*dūṣayet*) the body tissue (धातु)s.
- 34- **The stages of toxic shock**
- In the first shock of having taken a stationary poison, a person’s tongue becomes dark brown and stiff, he grows faint, and panics.
- 35 In the second, he trembles, feels exhausted, has a burning feeling, as well as a sore throat. When the poison reaches the stomach (आमाशय), it causes pain in the chest (हृद्).
- 36 In the third, his palate goes dry, he gets violent pain (शूल) in the stomach (आमाशय), and his eyes become weak, swollen and yellow.
- 37 In the fourth shock, it causes the intestines and stomach to be exhausted (साद), he gets hiccups, a cough, a rumbling in the gut (अन्त्र), and his head becomes heavy too.
- 38 In the fifth he dribbles phlegm (कफ), goes a bad colour, his ribs crack (पश्चभेद), all his humours are irritated, and he also has a pain in his intestines (पक्वाधान).
- 39a In the sixth, he loses consciousness and he completely loses control of his bowels.
- 39b In the seventh, there are breaks in his shoulders, back and loins, and he stops breathing.<sup>331</sup>

### Remedies for the stages of slow poisoning

- 40 In the first shock of the poison, the physician should make the man, who has vomited and been sprinkled with cold water, drink an antidote (अगद) mixed with honey and ghee.
- 41a In the second, he should make the man who has vomited and been purged drink as before;
- 41b on the third, drink an antidote and a beneficial nasal medicine (नस्य) as well as an eye salve (अञ्जन).

<sup>331</sup> Here at 5.2.24 (Su 1938: 566) Ḍalhana glossed *sannirodha* as “complete cessation, i.e., of breath” (*sannirodhaḥ samyaginirodhaḥ, ucchvāsasya iti śeṣaḥ*). The manuscripts all read *skanda* where *skandha* must be intended; this confusion is known from Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit (Edgerton 1953: 608).

- 42a In the fourth, the physician should make him drink an antidote that is salt with a little oil.<sup>332</sup>
- 42b In the fifth, he should be prescribed the antidote together with a decoction (क्वाथ) of honey and liquorice.
- 43 In the sixth, the cure (सिद्धि) is the same as for diarrhoea. And in the seventh, he perishes.<sup>333</sup>
- 44 In between any one of these shocks, once the above treatment has been done, he should give the patient the following cold gruel (यवागू) together with ghee and honey, that will take away the poison.
- 45–46 A gruel (यवागू) made of the following items in a stewed juice (निःक्वाथ) destroys the two poisons: luffa gourd,<sup>334</sup> wild celery,<sup>335</sup> velvet-leaf, sunflower,<sup>336</sup> heart-leaved moonseed, myrobalan siris, and selu plum,

332 At 6.52.30 (Su 1938: 769) Dalhaṇa noted that *sindhu* can be interpreted as salt (सैन्यव).

333 The vulgate text here is quite different, recommending that the patient have medicated powder blown up his nose. It may be possible to detect the evolution of the Nepalese अवसीदेत् to the vulgate's अवपीडश्. The vulgate version is hard to construe, and we see Dalhaṇa struggling to interpret it in his commentary on 5.2.43ab (Su 1938: 566). This sternutatory is, however, recommended in the Nepalese version at 5.5.30ab (Su 1938: 576), for the seventh shock of poisoning by a striped snake (राजिमत्). It is possible the text migrated from that location to this.

Another difference at this point is that the Nepalese version also does not support the vulgate's passage on the crow's foot (काकपद) therapy (Wujastyk 2003b: 145, n. 106). The same is the case at 5.5.24 (Su 1938: 575) and the clear description at 5.5.45 (Su 1938: 577), in neither of which is the therapy supported in the Nepalese version. This therapy seems unknown to the Nepalese transmission. Perhaps the therapy migrated into the vulgate *Suśrutasaṃhitā* from the *Carakasamhitā* 6.23.66–67 (Ca 1941: 574).

334 At 4.10.8 (Su 1938: 449) Dalhaṇa glossed कोशवती as देवदाली and at 4.18.20 (Su 1938: 472) as कटुकोशातकी, vocabulary pointing to *Cucumis cylindrica*, *Cucumis act-angula* or *Luffa echinata*. See glossary under luffa.

335 A plant often cited in *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, but rarely in *Carakasamhitā* (GVDB: 4). Dalhaṇa glossed it here, 5.2.45 (Su 1938: 566), as *ajamodā*, wild celery, but noted that others consider it to be *moraṭa*, rajmahal hemp. There is considerable complexity surrounding the identification of *moraṭa*/*mūrvā* and related synonyms (GVDB: 314–316). Taking *agnika* as a short reference to *agnimantha*, often identified as migraine tree, might be plausible, since that is antitoxic or anti-inflammatory, but such a short reference is not known elsewhere.

336 At 5.2.45 (Su 1938: 566) Dalhaṇa said that this plant has leaves like the *paṭola*, pointed gourd, T. B. Singh and Chuneekar (GVDB: 280, 443) argued plausibly that this is a synonym for *arkapuṣpī*, panacea twiner, as Dalhaṇa also stated in 1.45.120 (Su 1938: 206), and the leaves of *Holostemma* and *Trichosanthes* are indeed strikingly similar. The appearance of the plant, a creeper with sun-like flowers, fits the name. But there

white siris, the two kinds of turmeric,<sup>337</sup> and the two kinds of poison berry,<sup>338</sup> hogweed, peas, the three heating spices, the two kinds of Indian sarsaparilla<sup>339</sup> and blue water-lily.

---

remains much controversy about the identities of these candidates (e.g., ADPS: 195–198).

337 I.e., turmeric and Indian barberry.

338 I.e., poison berry and yellow-berried nightshade.

339 I.e., country sarsaparilla and black creeper.

## The invincible ghee

- 47-49 There is a famous ghee called “Invincible” (अजेय). It rapidly destroys all poisons but is itself unconquered. It is prepared with a mash (कल्क) of the following plants: liquorice, crape jasmine, costus, deodar, peas, Indian madder, cardamom and cherry, cobra’s saffron, blue water-lily, sugar, embelia, sandalwood, cassia cinnamon, beautyberry, rosha grass, the two turmeric<sup>340</sup> the two Indian nightshades,<sup>341</sup> the two kinds of Indian sarsaparilla,<sup>342</sup> beggarweed, and heart-leaf sida.

## Curing the ‘slow-acting’ poison

- 50-52 Someone suffering from “slow-acting poison (दूषीविष)” should be well sweated, and purged both top and bottom. Then he should be made to drink the following eminent antidote which removes “slow-acting poison:”  
Take long pepper, rosha grass, spikenard, lodh tree, cardamom, natron, scented pavonia, red chalk, as well as gold, and pondweed.  
This antitoxin, taken with honey, eliminates slow-acting poison. It is called the “enemy of slow-acting poison (दूषीविषारि),” and it is not prohibited in other situations.
- 53-54 If there are any other side-effects (उपद्रव), such as fever, a burning feeling, hiccups, constipation (आनाह), depletion of the semen, distension, diarrhoea, fainting, skin problems, bellyache (जठर), madness, trembling, then one should treat each one in its own terms, using anti-toxic medicines.
- 55 For a prudent person, the slow-acting poison can be cured (साध्य) immediately. It is treatable (याप्य) if it is of a year’s standing. Other than this, it should be avoided for the person who eats unwholesome things.

<sup>340</sup> I.e., turmeric and Indian barberry.

<sup>341</sup> I.e., poison berry and yellow-berried nightshade.

<sup>342</sup> I.e., country sarsaparilla and black creeper.

# Kalpasthāna 3: Poisonous Insects and Animals

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>343</sup>

## Translation

- 1 And now we shall explain the rule (कल्प) that is the required knowledge about mobile poisons.<sup>344</sup>
- 3 The full explanation about the sixteen carriers (अधिष्ठान) of the mobile poisons, that have been mentioned by me in brief, will be stated.<sup>345</sup>
- 4 In that context, they are:<sup>346</sup>
  - gaze and breath,
  - teeth, nails, and bites
  - urine and faeces,
  - **menstrual blood**,
  - semen,
  - **tail**,
  - **contact with saliva**,
  - nipping with the mouth (मु-

Come back to the issue of “kalpa”. Look up passages in the Kośa.

<sup>343</sup> [HIML](#): IA, 291–292.

<sup>344</sup> In contrast to stationary, plant poisons. No reference is made to Dhanvantari (see Birch, Wujastyk, Klebanov, Parameswaran, et al. [2021](#)).

<sup>345</sup> “Carrier” for base, foundation (अधिष्ठान) aims to capture the idea that the author will describe the creatures in which poisons inhere.

<sup>346</sup> The content of this section is presented as a table, for clarity for the contemporary reader and mindful of the theoretical issues surrounding notational variation, including the “symbolic rewriting” and the modification of “expressive capacities” discussed by Sarukkai ([2016](#): 321 ff). For further discussion, see Wujastyk [2021a](#): 81–83.

<sup>347</sup> This interpretation comes from Ḍaḥaṇa on 5.3.4 ([Su 1938](#): 567), but he reads विशर्चित.

- खसंदंशा),
- fart (अवशर्धित),<sup>347</sup>
- anus,<sup>348</sup>
- bones,
- bile,
- bristles (शूक), and
- corpses.

5 In that context,

<i>location of the poison</i>	<i>creatures</i> <sup>349</sup>
in their breath and gaze	divine snakes
in their fangs	the ones on earth <sup>350</sup>
in their nails, mouths and fangs	cats, dogs, monkeys, men (नर), <sup>351</sup> crocodiles, frogs, 'cook-fish' (पाकमत्स्य), <sup>352</sup> monitor lizards, cone snails (शम्बूक), 'poisonous snakes' (प्रचलाक), <sup>353</sup> geckos (गृहगोडिका), <sup>354</sup> four-footed insects and others
in their urine and faeces	lice (किटिप), 'flat insects' (पिच्चिटा), 'orange-dwellers' (कषायवासिक), 'pepper snakes' (सर्षपक), 'angry beetles' (तोटक), dung beetles (वर्चःकीट), and 'pot insects' (कौण्डिन्य)
in their semen	mice

348 Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.4 (Su 1938: 567) noted this reading.

349 Many of these names are mere dubious placeholders.

350 Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.5 (Su 1938: 567) cited the otherwise unknown authority Sāvitra on the topic of poisonous snakes (HIML: ???, ???).

351 Probably dittography from the previous word, monkey (वानर). But it is supported in both Nepalese witnesses, so it must go back to an earlier exemplar.

352 MS KL 699 separates the words पाक and मत्स्य with a daṇḍa, indicating that the scribe thought they were separate terms. Ḍalhaṇa thought this was a kind of fiery insect (5.3.5 (Su 1938: 567)).

353 Arthaśāstra 14.1.14, 23 (Olivelle 2013: 448), where it might also be a chameleon, but the latter are not venomous.

354 The scribe of MS NAK 5-333 noted in the margin that some of his sources read गल-गोडिका, which is the name of a snake known also in the Carakasamhitā and elsewhere in literature. Hemacandra's Abhidhānacintāmaṇi (4.364) mentions that गृहगोडिका and गृहगोलिका are synonyms (Rādhākāntā Deva 1876: 691a, sub māṇikyā).



<i>location of the poison</i>	<i>creatures</i>
in their stings (शूल)	scorpions, 'earth scorpions' (विश्वम्भर), wasps (वरकि), <sup>355</sup> fish, crabs (उच्चिटिङ्ग), and 'wing-scorpions' (पत्रवृश्चिक)
in their saliva, nails, urine, feces, blood, semen and fangs	spiders
in the bites of their mouths	flies, wasps (कणभ) and leeches
in the bites of their mouths, in their fangs, faces, †, farts, anuses and feces	'speckle-heads' (चित्रशीर्ष), 'lids' (शारव), 'bellied' (कुक्षित), 'wood-enemies' (दारुकारि), 'liquors' (मेदक), and 'darts' (शारिका).

Table 2: Passage 5, expressed in tabular format.

- 6 The enemies of the king pollute the waters, roads and foodstuffs in enemy territory. The experienced physician, who has learned how to purify things, should clean up those polluted things.
- 7 Polluted water is slimy and smells of tears.<sup>356</sup> It is covered with froth and covered with streaks. The frogs and fish die, the birds are crazed and, along with the wetland creatures, they wander about aimlessly.
- 8 Men, horses and elephants who swim in it experience vomiting, delusion, fever, swelling and sharp pains.<sup>357</sup> He should try to purify that

<sup>355</sup> वरटी is a wasp; वरकि in the Nepalese MSS may be an alternant of this word. Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.5 (Su 1938: 568) remarked that some interpreted वरकिमत्स्य as two items, "wasp and fish," others as a single one, "wasp-fish."

<sup>356</sup> अस्म normally means "tears," but rarely means "blood."

<sup>357</sup> On the polysemy of elephant/snake (नाग), see Semeka-Pankratov 1979.

- polluted water, after curing their ailments.
- 9 And so, he should burn axlewood and garjan oil tree, as well as corky coral tree, with crimson trumpet-flower tree and small-flowered crape myrtle and weaver's beam tree, and with golden shower tree and white catch tree. Then he should sprinkle that ash, cold, on the waters.
- 10–11 And in the same way, putting a handful of the ash in a pot, one may also purify water that one wants.  
If any one of the limbs of cows, horses, elephants, men or women, touch a place on the ground that enemies have spoiled with poison, or a ford or rock or a flat surface, then it swells up and burns and its hair and nails fall out on that place.<sup>358</sup>
- 12 In that situation, he should grind up country sarsaparilla together with all the aromatic items, with alcoholic drinks. And then he should sprinkle the paths that need to be used with waters mixed with mud.<sup>359</sup> And if there exists another path, he should go by that.<sup>360</sup>
- 13 When grasses and foods are polluted, people collapse, fall unconscious. And others vomit. They get loose stool (विद्भेद) or they die. One should apply to them the therapy as described.
- 14–15 Alternatively, one should wipe various musical instruments with antidotes that remove poison and then play them. What is called the most excellent paste for a musical instrument is certain minerals<sup>361</sup> together with gold and sarsaparilla, and a portion of of nutgrass equal to that,

358 “Swells up” translates an unclear reading that was probably शूयति, which may be an irregular form of √शू, श्वा, श्वि (see Whitney 1885: 175–176).

359 Our “alcoholic drinks” translates सुरा. For a discussion of this term at our period see mchu-2021a.

360 Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.12 (Su 1938: 568) cited a similar reading for the fourth pāda, but with a negative particle, “and if there is no other way, one should go by that.”

361 “Certain minerals” translates तारावितार, the unanimous reading of the Nepalese witnesses. But the meaning of this expression is not clear and may even refer to plants, like the other ingredients. The vulgate reads तारः सुतारः, which is also not very clear. However, Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.14 (Su 1938: 568) identified these as “silver” and “mercury.” This is highly unlikely to be a correct understanding of the passage. Historically, mercury is not naturally present in the South Asian peninsula (Watt<sub>Dict</sub>: 5, 233) and the word पारद that Ḍalhaṇa used is probably a loan-word from Persian (sub *paranda*, *par-randa* Steingass 1930: 244b). Mercurial compounds are not reliably attested in South Asia until two or three centuries after the composition of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* at the earliest. The currently available “śāstric” recension of the *Arthaśāstra* that is datable to 175–300 CE (Olivelle 2013: 29–31) does not mention mercury (*ibid*, 534). See further the study by Wujastyk (2013a: 17, *et passim*).

- together with the bile called “brown cow”.<sup>362</sup> By the sound of the musical instrument, even terrible poisons that may be present at that place are destroyed.
- 16 If there is smoke or wind that is affected by poison then birds are dazed and fall to the ground. People get coughs, colds, and head illnesses, and acute eye diseases.<sup>363</sup>
- 17 The smoke and air can be purified by putting into the air: lac, turmeric, Himalayan monkshood, and myrobalan, with Himalayan mayapple, costus, cardamom,<sup>364</sup> and peas, and beautyberry.

write footnote: don't repeat  
ativīṣā; vulgate similar to H.

### The origin of poison

- 18 As it is told, the arrogant demon called Kaiṭabha created an obstacle for lotus-born Brahmā, at the very time that he was creating these creatures.<sup>365</sup>
- 19 Pitiless Fury took a body and burst out of the mouth of furious Brahmā's store of fiery energy.<sup>366</sup>
- 20 He burned that great, thundering, apocalyptic demon. Then, after bringing about the annihilation of that demon, his amazing fiery energy increased.
- 21 And so, there was a sinking down (*viṣāda*) of the Daityas. Observing that, it was named “poison (*viṣa*)” because of its ability to produce a “sinking down.”
- 22 After that, the Lord created beings and subsequently made that fury enter into creatures still and moving.
- 23–24 Water that falls from the sky to the earth has no obvious flavour. The savour of the different places it lands on enters into it. In the same way,

<sup>362</sup> सुरेन्द्रगोप and कुरुविन्द are both uncertain, see index. Ḍalhaṇa's opinion has been followed here, but it seems fair to say that all commentators were guessing.

<sup>363</sup> The syntax of this verse is somewhat loose; the vulgate has regularized it, smoothing out the difficulties.

<sup>364</sup>

<sup>365</sup> At this point, the text seems to make a new beginning to the topic of toxicology, as if starting a new chapter. It is notable that no reference is made here to the famous origin story of poison in the churning of the primal milk ocean; for discussion of the sources of this account, see Bedekar 1967. For reflections on this passage, connecting it with Rudra and the *Śatapathabrāhmaṇa*, see Mānasa-taraṅgiṇī 2019.

<sup>366</sup> “Fury” is here anthropomorphised.

- whatever substance a poison reaches, it establishes itself there and by its nature it takes on that substance's savour.<sup>367</sup>
- 25 Generally speaking, in a poison, all the qualities are really sharp. For this reason, every poison is known to irritate all of the humours.
- 26 Irritated and afflicted by the poison, they leave their natural functions. Poison does not get digested, so it blocks the breaths.<sup>368</sup>
- 27 Breathing is obstructed because its pathway is blocked by phlegm. Even if life continues, a man remains without consciousness.
- 28 Similar to semen, the poison of all angry snakes pervades the whole body, and goes to the limbs like semen because of being stirred up.
- 29 The fang of snakes is like a hook. When it gets there, it sticks inside them. That is why the unagitated poison of a snake is not released.
- 30 Sprinkling with very cold water is traditional for all cases of poisoning, because poison is declared to be extremely hot and sharp.<sup>369</sup>
- 31 Poison in insects is slow and not very hot, having a lot of wind and phlegm. So in cases of insect poisoning, sweating is not forbidden.
- 32cd In cases of a strike or a bite, the poison may, of its own accord, stay there.
- 33-35ab †Having come upon a body,<sup>370</sup> in the case of corpses that have been pierced by a poisoned arrow and bitten by a snake, someone who eats the poisoned flesh of a recent corpse out of carelessness will suffer with illness according to the poison, or even die. And therefore, the flesh of those should not be eaten when they have just died.
- It is admissable after three quarters of an hour, but without the poisoned arrow and the snakebite.
- 35.1 [At this point an Upajāti verse is added in the margin of K but is not fully legible; the version of the text in H is also incomplete and not fully comprehensible.]<sup>371</sup>

367 The scribal emendation in MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333 of नियच्छति to निगच्छति suggests that the scribe had more than one manuscript before him, one of them representing the reading of the vulgate recension.

368 Probably a reference to the five breaths. Ḍalhaṇa referred to winds (वात), but this does not seem correct since it is a reference to humours rather than breaths.

369 The verb पठ् "is declared, read aloud" here could possibly suggest that the author is working within a written, not oral, tradition.

370 "Having come upon" translates प्रख्याप्य, which is hard to interpret unless it is a rare form connected with the sense "to see."

371 *Mādhavanidāna*, 69.20-21 (MN<sub>1</sub>: 480) has verses that are directly parallel to this section:

*darvīkarāṇāṃ viṣam āśughāti sarvāṇi coṣṇe dviguṇībhavanti ajīrṇapittātapapīḍiteṣu bāleṣu*

35.3 †When, in a wound, the poison that is connected with these qualities runs, ...Therefore, not everything that is damaged by poison and eaten causes death.

<sup>372</sup>

35.1 [śloka in the MSS that aren't in the vulgate. The first line doesn't scan. Witness K adds a part of the start of this in the bottom margin. This material is repeated at 3.39.2 in MS H. ]

35cd & 36cd One designates a person who has diarrhoea of feces looking like soot (गृहधूम) with wind,<sup>373</sup> and who vomits foam, as “someone who has drunk poison.”

37 Therefore, fire burns a heart that is pervaded by poison. For, having pervaded of its own accord the location of consciousness, it abides.<sup>374</sup>

## Patients beyond help

38 Patients who should not be accepted include: those who have been bitten under a **peepul tree**, in a temple, in a cemetery, at an ant-hill, at dawn or dusk, at a crossroads, under Yama's asterism,<sup>375</sup> under the Great Bear and people who have been bitten in lethal spots.

39 The poison of cobras kills rapidly. They all gain twice the intensity in those who have indigestion, those who are afflicted by bile or wind, old people, children and the hungry.

39.1 In those whose who are mad or intoxicated, or who suffer from anxiety, or who are unable to tolerate its various strengths, it becomes sharp. †...

39.2

*vṛddheṣu bubhukṣiteṣu 20*

*kṣīnakṣate mohini kuṣṭhayukte rūkṣe 'bale garbhavatīṣu cāpi*

*śastrakṣate yasya na raktam eti rāḍyo latābhiś ca na saṁbhavanti 21.* This passage is the only occurrence in the ayurvedic text corpus that relates to the Nepalese version of the *Suśrutasaṁhitā* at this point. This suggests that Mādhavakara (fl. ca. 700, Bengal) knew and used the Nepalese version.

372 At this point, witness H inserts a marginal Indravajrā verse about diseases that afflict immoral women.

373 गृहधूम is not a plant in this context *pace* MW: 362. See the discussion in note 279, p. 92.

374 Ḍalhaṇa said that someone who has died from drinking poison has a heart that cannot be burned because it is pervaded by poison (5.3.37 (*Su 1938*: 570)). But the sense of the Nepalese MSS is the opposite.

375 याम्ये means “southerly” but Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.38 (*Su 1938*: 570) interpreted it as “in Yama's direction” as “under the seventh asterism.”

material corresponds to SS.1.45.205ab, where it describes how alcohol affects the body.

- 3.40cd–3.41 One should reject someone overcome by poison who **does not bleed** when cut with a knife, where weals do not appear as a result of lashes,<sup>376</sup> or where there is no horripilation because of cold water, whose mouth is **crooked**, whose hair is falling out of his head. A man who is fatigued and those who stammer,<sup>377</sup>
- 3.42 one who has a black and red swelling at the site of the bite, with lockjaw, should be avoided. The same goes for someone who has a solid plug emerge from their mouth and someone who has blood running from above and below and
- 3.43ab The physician should also avoid a person who has fangs that have not fallen out quickly.<sup>378</sup>

376 Ḍalhaṇa, on 5.3.40 (Su1938: 570), glossed लताभिस् “by means of whips,” as “when the body is struck by whips.”

377 nāsāvasāda & plural sakaṇṭhabhaṅgāḥ

378 The grammatical verb-form परिवर्जयित “he should avoid,” opt., 3rd, sg., is unusual. Renou (1940: 10 ff) documented such forms from the *Aitareyabrāhmaṇa* onwards. Oberlies (2003: ¶6.3.3 “Peculiar optative endings”, pp. 176–177) showed that the form is well-documented in *manuscripts* of the *Mahābhārata*, but has been edited out of the printed critical edition in almost all cases. Cf. also Kulikov 2006.

The concern about a patient who “has fangs that have not fallen out” is hard to understand. The word दंष्ट्रा does not mean human teeth (दन्त). We therefore prefer to interpret this as a patient where the fangs of a venomous creature remain in the bite-wound. This requires construing the expression as a *bahuvrīhi* compound: दंष्ट्रा or दंष्ट्र + अनिपातः.

# Kalpasthāna 4: Snakes and Invenomation

## Introduction

The fourth chapter of the Kalpasthāna of the *Suśrutasamhitā* addresses the topic of snake bites and snake venom. Unusually for the Nepalese version of the *Suśrutasamhitā*, the discussion is framed as a question from Suśruta to the wise Dhanvantari. Suśruta's questions are about the number of snakes, how they are classified, the symptoms of their bites and the pulses or stages of toxic shock experienced by a victim of snakebite and related topics. The taxonomy of snakes is presented in tabular form in Figures 1 and 2.<sup>379</sup>

## Literature

A brief survey of this chapter's contents and a detailed assessment of the existing research on it to 2002 was provided by Meulenbeld.<sup>380</sup> There also exists an substantial herpetological literature from colonial India as well as more recent studies of snakes in the context of cultural and religious life.

The ophiological literature of the colonial period began in the late nineteenth century with the work of Fayrer, whose publication included striking colour paintings of snakes.<sup>381</sup> Fayrer provided a biological taxonomy

---

<sup>379</sup> On the idea of notational variants in scientific translation, see Elshakry 2008; Sarukkai 2016; Wujastyk 2021a: 81–83.

<sup>380</sup> HIML: IA, 292–294. In addition to the translations mentioned by Meulenbeld (HIML: IB, 314–315), a translation of this chapter was included in P. V. Sharma 1999–2001: 3, 35–45.

<sup>381</sup> Fayrer 1874, first published in 1872.

of snakes as well as chapters on mortality statistics during the nineteenth century, treatment and effects of poison, and experimental data. Ewart (1878) included descriptions of appearance and behaviour of poisonous snakes and sometimes their local names and reproducing Fayrer's illustrations.<sup>382</sup> Wall (1913: 75–124) provided a useful analysis of the medical effects of snake envenomation in India arranged by the varied symptomology of different snakes. He also discussed the difference between the symptoms of toxicity and fright (69–75) and also the difficulties arising out of uncertainty about the effects of snake-bite (124–126). The *Suśrutasaṃhitā* too recognized the emotional and somatic effects of fright (see note 394 below). Wall (1921) provided a wealth of detail of the snakes of Sri Lanka, including line drawings.

Doniger (2015) provided a good survey of snakes as protagonists in religious literature from the *Atharvaveda* through the epics, *Purāṇas* and Buddhist literature. Semeka-Pankratov (1979) traced semiotics of the term *nāga* through Vedic, Pali and Sanskrit literature. Slouber (2016: 31–33 *et passim*) discussed the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*'s *Kalpasthāna* as a precursor and influence on later Tantric traditions of snake-bite interpretation and therapy. In particular, the Tantric *Kriyākālaguṇottara* text that Slouber presented divided snakes into two basic categories, divine and mundane, as the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* does.<sup>383</sup> But unlike the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, in the *Kriyākālaguṇottara* the chief taxonomic principle for both groups is the four *varṇas*.

A discussion of this chapter specifically in the light of the Nepalese manuscripts was published by Harimoto.<sup>384</sup> After a close comparative reading of lists of poisonous snakes, Harimoto concluded that, “the Nepalese version is internally consistent while the [vulgate] editions are not.” Harimoto showed how the vulgate editions had been adjusted textually to smooth over inconsistencies, and gave insights into these editorial processes.<sup>385</sup>

<sup>382</sup> Calling his work a supplement to Fayrer (1874), but also being cited by Fayrer, Ewart 1878 evidently also collected local indigenous knowledge from his “snake-man” (p. 22).

<sup>383</sup> Slouber 2016: 144–145.

<sup>384</sup> Harimoto 2011: 101–104.

<sup>385</sup> The two editions that Harimoto noted, Su 1938 and Su 1889, present identical texts.



## Translation

- 1 Now we shall explain the procedure (कल्प) about what should be known concerning the venom in those who have been bitten by snakes.<sup>386</sup>
- 3 Suśruta, grasping his feet, questions the wise Dhanvantari, the expert in all the sciences.
- 4 “My Lord, please speak about the number of snakes, and their divisions, the symptoms of someone who has been bitten, and the knowledge about the successive shocks (वेग) of poisoning”.<sup>387</sup>
- 5 On hearing his query, that distinguished physician spoke.  
“The venerable snakes such as Vāsukī and Takṣaka are uncountable.
- 6–gab “They are snake-lords who support the earth, as bright as the ritual fire, ceaselessly roaring, raining and scorching. They hold up the earth, with its oceans, mountains and continents. If they are angered, they can destroy the whole world with a breath and a look. Honour to them. They have no role here in medicine.  
“The ones that I shall enumerate in due order are those mundane ones with poison in their fangs who bite humans.<sup>388</sup>
- 9cd–10 “There are eighty kinds of snakes and they are divided in five ways: Darvīkaras, Maṇḍalins, Rājīmats, and Nirviṣas. And Vaikarañjas that are traditionally of three kinds.<sup>389</sup>
- 11 “Of those, there are twenty and six hooded snakes, and the same number of Maṇḍalins are known. There are thirteen Rājīmats.<sup>390</sup>

386 The *Sarvāṅgasundarī*, commenting on 1.16.17 (Ah 1939: 246), glossed कल्प as प्रयोग.

387 The expression “successive shocks” translates वेग, which in other contexts may mean “(natural) urge.” Here, it is rather the discrete stages or phases of physiological reaction to envenomation. Cf. the symptoms of cobra poisoning described by Wall (1913: 80).

388 The next few verses are discussed in detail by Harimoto (2011: 101–104), who shows that in the taxonomy of snakes, the Nepalese version of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* has greater internal coherence than the vulgate recension.

389 Harimoto (2011) translated these names as “hooded,” “spotted,” “striped,” “harmless,” and “hybrid.” Figure 1 shows the taxonomy described in the vulgate text; Figure 2 shows the different and more logical division of the Nepalese version of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*.

390 The phrasing of this śloka is awkward.

Or “There are 20 phanins and 6 maṇḍalins. The same number are known. There are 13 Rājīmats.” Or even, “there are 20 Phanins and six of them are Maṇḍalins.” Are phanins really the same as darvīkaras?

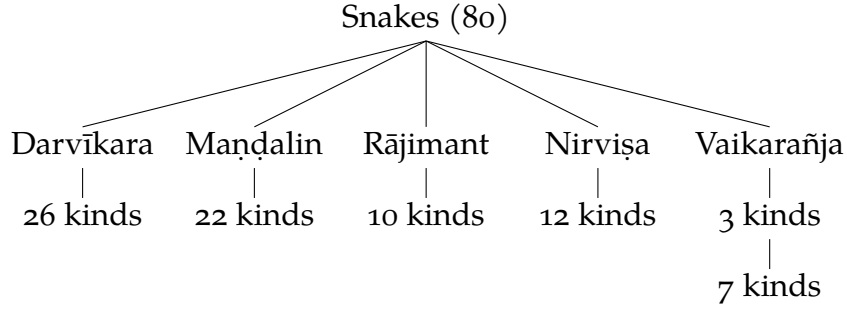


Figure 1: The taxonomy of snakes in the vulgate, 5.4.9–13ab (Su 1938: 571).

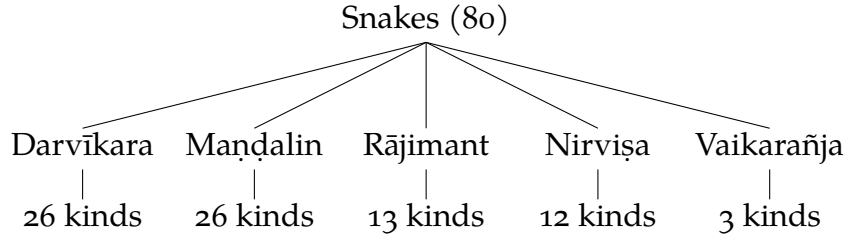


Figure 2: The taxonomy of snakes in the Nepalese version.

- 12 “There are said to be twelve Niriviṣas and, according to tradition, three Vaikarañjas.
- 13–14ef “If they are trodden on, ill-natured or provoked or even just looking for food, those very angry snakes will bite. And that is said to happen in three ways: serpented (सर्पित), torn (दरित) and thirdly without venom (निर्विष). Some experts on this want to add “hurt by the snake’s body”.<sup>391</sup>
- 15–16 “The physician can recognize the following as “ophidian (सर्पित)”: Where a rearing snake makes one, two or more puncture-marks of its teeth, when they are deep and without much blood,<sup>392</sup> accompanied

391 This might refer to constriction. The phrase reads like a commentarial addition rather than the main text of the *Suśrutasamhitā*.

392 The word उद्धृत “aroused” was glossed by Ḍalhana at 5.4.15 (Su 1938: 571) as उन्मोद्य, a word not found as such in standard dictionaries (MW; KEWA; AyMahā; Apte). Semantic considerations suggest that the word is not related to  $\sqrt{muṭ}$  “break” or *mūta*/*mūṭa* “woven basket.” Perhaps it is related to the Tamil மோதி (*mōṭi*), whose meanings include “arrogance, grandeur, display” (DED<sub>2</sub>: #5133) or to faintly-documented forms like *moṭyate* “is twisted” (CDIAL: #10186). Ḍalhana’s उन्मोद्य may thus mean “twisting up” or “making an arrogant display.”

- by a little ring of spots (चुञ्चुमालक),<sup>393</sup> lead to degeneration, and are close together and swollen.
- 17 Where there are streaks with blood, whether it be blue or white, the physican should recognize that to be “torn (दरित),” having a small amount of venom.
- 18 The physician can recognize the locations of the bites of a person in a normal state as being free from poison, when the location is not swollen, and there is little corrupted blood.
- 19 The wind of a timid person who has been touched by a snake can get irritated by fear. It causes swelling.<sup>394</sup> That is “hurt by a snake’s body.”
- 20 Locations bitten by sick or frightened snakes are known to have little poison. Similarly, a site bitten by very young or old snakes has little poison.
- 21 Poison does not progress in a place frequented by eagles,<sup>395</sup> gods, holy sages, **spirits**, and saints, or in places full of herbs that destroy poison.<sup>396</sup>

grammar

Note that पद “puncture-mark” (more literally, “footprint”) is being used in the same sense as in 1.13.19 (Su 1938: 57) when describing the marks on the body where a knife scarifies the skin before leeching. See footnote 48.

393 The usual dictionary lexeme is चञ्चु, not चुञ्चु as in the Nepalese witnesses. We translate “spots” following Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa on 5.4.15 (Su 1938: 571), where they described a group of spots or swellings at the site of the bite. On the history of the word मालक, see Kieffer-Pülz 1996.

394 Wall (1913: 69) remarked on the difficulty of separating toxicity symptoms from the psychosomatic effects of terror:

The gravity of symptoms due to fright does not appear to me to be sufficiently recognised, though there is no doubt in my mind that fatal cases from this cause are abundant, especially among the timid natives of this country.

Wall went on to give several case studies in which patients experienced syncope or even died as a result of bites from toxicologically harmless creatures.

395 Ḍalhaṇa on 5.4.21 (Su 1938: 571) identified the सुपर्ण as a गरुड. On the bird called सुपर्ण, Dave (1985: 72 ff, 514) too noted that it may be a synonym for Garuḍa, and in some contexts may refer to the Golden Eagle, Golden Oriole, Lammergeyer, etc. Dave (1985: 199 ff, 492) noted again that the Garuḍa is a mythical bird but may refer to the Himalayan Golden Eagle and other species of eagle. He pointed out that historically, The original physical basis for गरुड as the नागाशी (snake-eater) was most probably the Sea-Eagle who picks up sea-snakes from the sea or sand-beach and devours them on a nearby tree... (Dave 1985: 201).

Dave continued with interesting reference to Śrīharṣa’s *Nāgānanda*.

396 For “spirits” the Nepalese version has भूत while the vulgate reads यक्ष.

### [Types of snake]

- 22 Darvīkara snakes are known to have hoods, to move rapidly, and to have rings, ploughs, umbrellas, crosses, and hooks on them.
- 23 Maṇḍalin snakes are known for being large and slow-moving. They are decorated with many kinds of circles. They are like a flaming fire because of their poisons.
- 24 Rājimant snakes are smooth and traditionally said to be, as it were, mottled with multicoloured streaks across and above.

### [Classes of snake]

- 25 Snakes that shine like pearls and silver, and that are amber and that shine like gold, and smell sweet are traditionally thought of as being of the Brāhmaṇa caste.
- 26 Warrior snakes, however, are those that look glossy and get very angry. They have the mark of the sun, the moon, the earth, an umbrella and bitumen.
- 27 Merchant snakes may traditionally be black, shine like diamond or have a red colour or be grey like pigeons.
- 28 Any snakes that are coloured like a buffalo and a tiger, with rough skin and different colours are known as servants.<sup>397</sup>
- 31 All snakes that are variegated (Rājīmats) move about during the first watch of the night. The rest, on the other hand, the Maṇḍalins and the Darvīkaras, are diurnal.<sup>398</sup>
- 29 Wind is irritated by all hooded snakes; bile by Maṇḍalins and phlegm by those with many stripes.
- 30 Because of the two classes having greater, lesser or equal class, there is the characteristic of irritating two humours.  
And he will explain the opposing view that is to be known as a result of the non-union of a male and female.<sup>399</sup>

<sup>397</sup> Presumably “different” from the earlier-mentioned castes.

The sequence of the following three verses is slightly different from the vulgate (5.4.29–31 (Su 1938: 572)).

<sup>398</sup> The readings of the vulgate, that Rājīmats are active in the early night, the Maṇḍalins in the later night, and Darvīkaras in the day, seem clearer.

<sup>399</sup> The sense of the last phrase here is quite different from the vulgate, which says only that “details” will be explained below.

## [Enumeration of snakes]

34.1 In that context, here are the Darvikaras.

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. The Black snake (कृष्णसर्प);              | 16. The Grass Flower (अपुष्प);    |
| 2. The Big Black (महाकृष्ण);                 | 17. The Curd Mouth (दधिमुख);      |
| 3. The Black Belly (कृष्णोदर);               | 18. The Lotus Mouth               |
| 4. The All Black (सर्वकृष्ण); <sup>400</sup> | (पुण्डरीकमुख);                    |
| 5. The White Pigeon                          | 19. The Brown Hut Mouth           |
| (श्वेतकपोत); <sup>401</sup>                  | (बभ्रूकुटीमुख);                   |
| 6. The Rain Cloud (बलाहको);                  | 20. The Variegated (विचित्र);     |
| 7. The Great Snake (महासर्प);                | 21. The Flower Sprinkle Beauty    |
| 8. The Conch Keeper (शंखपाल);                | (पुष्पाभिकीर्णाभ);                |
| 9. The Red Eye (लोहिताक्ष);                  | 22. The Mountain Snake            |
| 10. The Gavedhuka (गवेधुक);                  | (गिरिसर्प);                       |
| 11. The Snake Around (परिसर्प);              | 23. The Straight Snake (ऋजुसर्प); |
| 12. The Break Hood (खण्डफण);                 | 24. The White Rip (श्वेतदर);      |
| 13. The Kūkuṭa (कूकुट);                      | 25. The Big Head (महाशीर्ष); and  |
| 14. The Lotus (पद्म);                        | 26. The Hungry Sting (अलगर्द);    |
| 15. The Great Lotus (महापद्म);               |                                   |

34.2 Here are the Maṇḍalins

- |                                  |                             |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. The Mirror Ring               | 12. The Intoxicator (मदनक); |
| (आदर्शमण्डल);                    | 13. The Morning Glory       |
| 2. The White Ring (श्वेतमण्डल);  | (पालिन्दक);                 |
| 3. The Red Ring (रक्तमण्डल);     | 14. The Stretch (तन्तुक);   |
| 4. The Speckled (पृषत);          | 15. The Pale as a Flower    |
| 5. The Gift of God (देवदिन्न);   | (पुष्पपाण्डु);              |
| 6. The Pilindaka (पिलिन्दक);     | 16. The Six Part (षडङ्ग);   |
| 7. The Big Cow Snout             | 17. The Flame (अग्निक);     |
| (वृद्धगोनस);                     | 18. The Brown (बभ्रु);      |
| 8. The Jackfruit (पनसक);         | 19. The Ochre (कषाय);       |
| 9. The Big Jackfruit             | 20. The Khaluṣa (खलुष);     |
| (महापनसक);                       | 21. The Pigeon (पारावत);    |
| 10. The Bamboo Leaf (वेणुपत्रक); | 22. The Hand Decoration     |
| 11. The Kid (शिशुक);             | (हस्ताभरणक);                |

<sup>400</sup> Not in vulgate.

<sup>401</sup> The vulgate adds The Big Pigeon (महाकपोत).

<sup>402</sup> This seems implausible, but otherwise the list of Maṇḍalins would be short.

23. The Tatra (तत्र);<sup>402</sup>  
 24. The Mark (चित्रक);

25. The Deer Foot (एणीपद).<sup>403</sup>

34.3 Here are the Rājīmats.<sup>404</sup>

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The Lotus (पुण्डरीक);                    | 6. The Mud (कर्म);                              |
| 2. The Stripe Speckle (राजिचित्र);          | 7. The Grass Drier (तृणशोषक);                   |
| 3. The Finger Stripe (अङ्गुलिराजि);         | 8. The White Jaw (स्वेतहनु);                    |
| 4. The Two Finger Stripe (द्व्यङ्गुलिराजि); | 9. The Grass Flower (दर्भपुष्प); <sup>405</sup> |
| 5. The Drop Stripe (बिन्दुराजि);            | 10. The Red Eye (लोहिताक्ष); <sup>406</sup>     |
|   | 11. The Ringed (चक्रक);                         |
|   | 12. The Worm Eater (किक्किसाद);                 |

34.4 Here are the Nirviṣas.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. The Rain Cloud (बलाहको); <sup>407</sup> | 8. The Two-day (द्व्याहिक);          |
| 2. Thei Snake Flag (अहिपताक);              | 9. The Milk Flower (क्षीरिकापुष्प);  |
| 3. The White Leaf (शुकपत्र);               | 10. The Flower All (पुष्पसकली);      |
| 4. The Goat Swallower (अजगर);              | 11. The Chariot of Light (ज्योतीरथ); |
| 5. The Stimulator (दीप्यक);                | 12. The Little Tree (वृक्षक);        |
| 6. The Ilikinī (इलिकिनी);                  |                                      |
| 7. The Year-Snake (वर्षाहीक);              |                                      |

34.5 The Vaikarañjas originate out of contrary unions amongst the three colours.<sup>408</sup> Thus:

1. The Mākuli (माकुलि);
2. The Poṭa Throat (पोटगल);
3. The Oil Stripe (स्निग्धराजि);

Amongst those, the Mākuli (माकुलि); is born when a male Black Snake mates with a female Cow Snout (गोनस), or the reverse. The Poṭa Throat

varṇa means "colour" else-where?

403 The list is short by one item. Perhaps the one of the snakes named in the vulgate, *citramaṇḍala*, *gonasa* or *piṅgala*, should be considered here.

404 The following list is one item short. The vulgate text, however, has several names that do not appear in the Nepalese Rājīmat list, for example *Sarṣapaka* and *Godhūmaka*.

405 Also in the Darvīkara list.

406 Also in the Darvīkara list.

407 Also in the Darvīkara list.

408 The word *varṇa* in this chapter normally means "colour" not "class." ("Class is expressed by "jāti.") While *kṛṣṇasarpa* is clearly a colour-type, it is less obvious that *gonasī* is a special colour, and *rājīmat* is a group of snakes.

(पोटगल) is born when a male Rājila mates with a female Cow Snout (गोनस) or the reverse. The Oily Stripe (सिग्धराजि) is born when a male Black Snake mates with a female Rājimat, or the reverse. Their poison is like that of their father, because it is the superior one out of the two; but others say it is like the mother. Thus eighty of these snakes have been described.

35 Amongst them, males have large eyes, tongues and heads.<sup>409</sup> Females have small eyes, tongues and heads. Neuters have both characteristics, and are slow to exert themselves or be angry.<sup>410</sup>

36 In that context we shall give instruction in a general way about the sign of having been bitten by any of the snakes.  
For what reason?

Because poison acts quickly, like a fire with an oblation, a honed sword, or a thunderbolt. And ignored for even a period of time, it can drag the patient away. There is not even an opportunity to follow the literature.<sup>411</sup> And when the symptom of being bitten is stated, there will be three ways of treating it because there are three kinds of snake. Therefore we shall explain it in three ways. For this is good for patients, does cause confusion, and in this alone is every manifestation contained.

37 Thus, the poison of a Darvīkara causes the skin, nails, eyes, mouth, urine, feces, and teeth to be black; there is driness, the joints hurt and the head feels heavy; the waist, back and neck feel weak; there is yawning, the voice becomes faint, ...

38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45

409 The vulgate includes the snake's mouth in this and the next list.

410 The reading मन्दचेष्टाक्रोधा is an awkward compound; possibly the original reading was मन्दचेष्टा: + अक्रोधा and sandhi was applied twice.

411 The idea seems to be that there is no time to consult the verbose āyurvedic teachings. The "extensive meaning of the literature (वाक्समूहार्थविस्तार)" is singled out as one of Āyurveda's virtues in 5.8.142 (Su 1938: 594).





# **Uttaratantra**



# Uttaratantra 17: Preventing Diseases of the Pupil

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>412</sup>

The history of couching in India has been discussed since the nineteenth century,<sup>413</sup>

## Translation

- 1 Now I shall explain the counteraction (प्रतिषेध) of diseases located in the pupil (दृष्टि).
- 2 There are three curable (साध्य), three incurable (असाध्य), and six mitigatable (याप्य) diseases located in peoples eyes. Among these, three are curable (साध्य). Amongst these three, the remedy (प्रतीकार) has been stated for the one called “seeing smoke (धूमदर्शिन्)”.<sup>414</sup>
- 3–5ab When the eye is inflamed (विदग्ध) by bile and when it is inflamed by phlegm, one should apply the method for removing bile and phlegm, using nasal medicines (नस्य), irrigation (सेक), application of collyrium (अञ्जन), liniment (आलेप), and medicines cooked in a crucible (पुटपाक),

---

<sup>412</sup> HIML: IA, 305–306.

<sup>413</sup> Scott 1817; Breton 1826; Jack 1884; Hendley 1895; Elliot 1918; Śāstrī 1940; V. Deshpande 1999; 2000; Wujastyk 2003b; Fan 2005; Leffler et al. 2020.

<sup>414</sup> This disease and its cure are described earlier (SS.6.7.39 and SS.6.10.16 (Su 1938: 609 and 614) respectively). The latter part of this verse is hard to construe and the text here may have been altered at an early period.

where is  
cutting  
with a knife  
related to  
remov-  
ing bile or  
phlegm.

together with an eyewash (तर्पण),<sup>415</sup> but not cutting with a blade (शस्त्र-क्षत).<sup>416</sup>

One should drink ghee (सर्पिस्) prepared with the three fruits (त्रिफला) and in the first [case where the problem is bile], and prepared with turpeth (त्रैवृत) in the latter [case, of phlegm].

And ghee prepared with tilvaka (तैल्वक) is wholesome in both cases, or else aged ghee on its own.

5cd–7ab In a collyrium, these four compounds (योग) are beneficial in both cases:

maṣī  
burned  
charcoal.  
Find refs.

- ochre (गैरिक), Sind salt (सैन्धव), long pepper (कृष्णा) and the black soot (मषी) from cow's teeth;
- Cow's flesh (गोमांस), black pepper (मरिच), siris (शिरीष) and red arsenic (मनःशिला);
- stalk (वृन्त) from a wood apple (कपित्थ) with honey (मधु);<sup>417</sup>
- or the the fruits of the velvet bean (स्वयंगुप्त).

8 The physician should make a collyrium with ground up metal (कुप्यक),<sup>418</sup> Asoka tree (अशोक), Sal tree (शाला), mango (अम्र), beautyberry (प्रियंगु), Indian lotus (नलिन), blue lotus (उत्पल), together with hareṇu (हरेणु), emblic (आमलक), myrobalan (पथ्या), long pepper (पिप्पलि). It should be combined with ghee and honey (क्षौद्र).

9–10 Also, when bile and phlegm have developed, the physician should apply hareṇu (हरेणु) with the expressed juice (स्वरस) of the flowers from mango (अम्र) and Jambu (जम्बू) trees.

Then this collyrium, matured (विपक्व) with ghee and honey (क्षौद्र), should then be applied.

10–11ab Filaments (किञ्जल्क) of Indian lotus (नलिन) and blue lotus (उत्पल), with ochre (गैरिक), and the juice of cow-dung (गोशकृत्) are a collyrium in the form of a pill (गुडिका). This is good for both day and night blindness.

11cd–12ab Elixir-salve (रसाञ्जन), honey (क्षौद्र), ghee, scramberry (तालीश), together with gold and ochre, with the juice of cow-dung (गोशकृत्) are for an eye afflicted with bile.

415 These therapies are described in SS.6.18 (Su 1938: 633–640).

416 Dalhaṇa interpreted this as blood-letting (सिरावेध), which is discussed in SS.1.14 (Su 1938).

417 Wood apple (कपित्थ) in this verse is ablative singular or accusative plural, neither of which construe obviously.

418 A metal other than gold or silver, according to V. Joṣī and N. H. Joṣī (AyMahā: 1.217). Perhaps lead, which is used in making contemporary collyrium.

- 12cd–13 Alternatively, wise physician should first grind together elixir-salve (शीत) and stibnite (सौवीरक), infused (भावित) with the blood of birds and animals (रस).<sup>419</sup> Then he mixes it with the bile of a tortoise or with extract of rohu carp (रौहित). It should always be used with powdered collyrium to quell the bile.
- 14 Thus, a collyrium of white teak (काश्मरी) flowers, liquorice (मधुक), tree turmeric (दार्वी), lodh tree (लोध्र) and elixir salve (रसाञ्जन) is always good as a collyrium in this case.
- 15 Alternatively, for those who cannot see during the day, this pill (गुडिका), with sandalwood, is recommended: salt (नदीज), conch shell and the three spices, collyrium, realgar (मनःशिला), the two turmeric (रजन)<sup>420</sup> and liver extract (यकृद्रस).<sup>421</sup>
- 16 One should grind up kohl (स्रोतोज),<sup>422</sup> and Sind salt (सैन्धव) and long pepper and also hareṇu (हरेणु). Such wicks with goats urine are good in a collyrium for night blindness (क्षणदान्ध्य).
- 17–18ab Alternatively, in such a case, grind together Indian sarsaparilla (कालानुसारिव)<sup>423</sup> long pepper, dried ginger (नागर) and honey, the leaf of the scramberry (तालीशपत्र), the two turmeric (रजन), a conch shell and liver extract (यकृद्रस). Then shade-dried wicks take away illness (रुज्).
- 18cd–19ab Wicks made of red arsenic (मनःशिला), chebulic myrobalan (अभया), the three spices (व्योष). Indian sarsaparilla (सारिव), cuttlefish bone (समुद्रफेन), combined with goat's milk are good.
- 19cd–21ab One should cook a honey collyrium (क्षौद्राञ्जन) either in the juices of cow's urine (गोमूत्र), and bile, spirits (मदिरा), liver (यकृत्), and emblic (धात्री) or else in the juice of the liver (यकृत्) of something different, or else with the extract of the three fruits (त्रिफला). One of these should be mixed with cow urine, ghee and cuttle fish (अर्णवमल)<sup>424</sup> with long

419 This was Ḍalhaṇa's preferred interpretation of *rasa* "juice" in this context. He also noted that some take elixir-salve (शीत) to be camphor.

420 Turmeric (*Curcuma longa* Linn.) and tree turmeric (*Berberis aristata* DC). The term *rajana* is unusual; the normal term is *rajanī*. *Rajana* occurs in *Suśrutaniḡhaṇṭu* 158 in the sense of *Ferula asafoetida*, Linn.

421 This verse appears as no. 27 in the vulgate.

422 Glossed by Ḍalhaṇa as a kind of collyrium. Cf. **nadk-1954** and P. V. Sharma 1982: 197–198

423 There are two forms of *sārivā* mentioned widely in Āyurvedic literature, the white and the black. Ideas on the identity of the black form are particularly fluid. See Sivarajan and Balachandran (ADPS: 434–438) for a clear discussion.

424 At SS 6.12.31, Ḍalhaṇa glossed *aṇṇavamala* as cuttlefish bone (समुद्रफेन). It may be

- pepper, honey and box myrtle (कङ्कल). It is placed in sea salt and stored in a bamboo tube.
- 21cd–22 One should cook the liver of a sheep, the ghee of a goat, with long pepper and Sindh salt, honey and the juice of emblics. Then one should store it properly in a catechu box. Prepared thus, the honey collyrium is good.
- 23 Alternatively, a collyrium that is hareṇu (हरेणु) mixed with long pepper (मागधी), the bone and the marrow of a goat, cardamom (एला) and liver, together with liver extract, is good for eyes afflicted by phlegm.<sup>425</sup>
- 24 Over a fire, one should cook the liver (यकृत) of a monitor lizard (गोधा) prepared with entrails (अन्त) and stuffed with long pepper (मागधि). As is well known, liver (यकृत) which is used (निषेवित) with collyrium certainly destroys night blindness.
- 25 After preparing both a spleen (प्लीहन्) and a liver on a spit, one should eat them both with ghee and oil.<sup>426</sup>
- 25cd–26ab As is well known, there are six diseases that can be alleviated (याप्य); in those cases (तत्र) one should release the blood by bloodletting. And for the sake of wellbeing one should also purge using aged ghee combined (उपहित) with purgative aids (अङ्ग).
- 26cd–27 When an eye-disease is caused by wind (पवनोद्भव) they say that castor oil (पञ्चाङ्गुलतैल) mixed with milk is good.<sup>427</sup> In the case of diseases of blood (शोनित) and bile (पित्त), one should drink ghee with the three fruits; it is particularly cleansing.<sup>428</sup> In the case of phlegm, a purgative

worth considering whether the unusual term *arṇavamala* “ocean-filth” might refer to ambergris.

425 On the identities of *elā* and *hareṇu*, Watt ([WattComm](#): 511 ff) described the former as “true” or “lesser” or “Malabar” cardamom, *Elettaria cardamomum*, Maton & White. In contrast, the “greater” cardamom is *Amomum subulatum* (that Watt discussed on p. 65) that is commonly used as an inferior substitute for *E. cardamomum*. T. B. Singh and Chuneekar ([GVDB](#): 467 f) provided an interesting discussion of *hareṇu*, noting that the term refers to two substances, first the *satīna* pulse (*Pisum sativum*, Linn.), and second an unknown fruit such as perhaps a *Vitex*. They noted, “None of the text commentators have attempted to disclose the nature of its source plant,” although Ḍalhaṇa described it as aromatic and identical to *reṇukā* (SS.ci.2.75).

426 We read the locative as if an instrumental; if the locative were intended then it would be the spit that would be coated with oil and ghee.

427 Ḍalhaṇa said that the unexpressed topic of this recipe is partial blindness (तिमिर).

428 Blood-bile (शोनित-पित्त, रक्त-पित्त) is a widely-recognized disease in ayurveda, but the compound here is definitely dual, which rules out that interpretation. One would

by means of turpeth (त्रिवृत्) is recommended. In the case of all three humours, sandal (सुगन्धि) in oil is prepared with it (turpeth).<sup>429</sup>

28 In cases of partial blindness (तिमिर), aged ghee is recommended. It is good if it is kept in an iron vessel.

28cd–29ab One should know that ghee with the three mylobalans is always good, and it is made with what is called periploca of the woods (मेषविषाण).

A man who is suffering from partial blindness should lick the finely-ground three fruits mixed with ghee off his hand (सपाण).<sup>430</sup>

29cd Alternatively, someone afflicted by phlegm should apply them (the three fruits) mixed with oil and steeped (प्रगाढ) in honey.

30 The very best oil, well-cooked with a decoction of cow-dung, is good in cases of partial blindness, taken as an errhine.

In cases caused by bile, ghee by itself is good, as is oil when it arises from wind and blood.

31 And in the case of wind one should apply turpeth (त्रिवृत्) based on strong mallow (अतिबला), and country mallow (बला) in an errhine (नस्य).<sup>431</sup>

Ghee which has been extracted from milk cooked with the meat of aquatic creatures and those from marshlands should be prescribed.

32 †An enclosed roasting (पुटाव्य) with Sindh salt and the product of the meat of a carnivore (क्रव्यभुज्) and a deer (एण), is combined with honey and ghee.<sup>432</sup>

expect blood-bile because the previous verse

429 The expression “the fragrant one in oil (तैलसुगन्धि)” is puzzling. The word *sugandhi* has different referents in the *Nighaṇṭu* literature but is not common as a noun in the extant literature. “Sandal” is just one of its possible meanings.

430 “Off his hand” translates the adverbial *sapāṇam*, an unusual word. Ḍalhaṇa reproduced a reading close to the Nepalese recension but says that Jejjāṭa rejects it and so he also does (Su 1938: 627).

431 “Based on” translates *-āśrita* “depending on” which does not construe easily here. The vulgate has *śṛta* “cooked” which makes easier sense but is not supported by the Nepalese MSS.

432 Ḍalhaṇa noted (Su 1938: 628a) that *puṭāhvaya* (see verse 35 below) is a synonym for *puṭapāka*, and that the process is described in the *Kriyākālpa* chapter, i.e., SS.6.18.33–38 (Su 1938: 635). On the *puṭa* process in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, which is earlier and different than that of *rasaśāstra* literature, see the discussion by Wujastyk (2019: 83):

The term ‘enclosed roasting’ (*puṭapāka*) does occur in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* in the context of eye treatments, but designates a method of obtaining juice from substances by wrapping them in leaves pasted with earth and cooking the bolus on charcoal to finally extract a juice.

- Fat (वसा) from a horse, a vulture, a snake, and a cock (ताम्रचूड), combined with mahua (मधूक) is always good in a collyrium.<sup>†433</sup>
- 33 Having prepared (निषेवित) a collyrium made of kohl (स्रोतस्) and gradually combine it with juices (रस), milk and ghee.<sup>434</sup>  
For thirty days, this collyrium is put in the mouth of a black snake that is covered with kuśa grass (कुश).
- 34 Next, a collyrium that is milk containing long pepper (मागधी), lye (क्षारक) and Sindh salt (सैन्धव) that has been repeatedly prepared with the mouth of a black snake, is good in the case of bloodshot blindness (रागिन् तिमिर).<sup>435</sup>
- 35 They say that ghee may be produced from that and combined with sweet herbs is good as an errhine for eye-diseases caused by bile.  
And here, an eyewash (तर्पण) is good that is a combination that is the flesh of wild animals taken hot (पुटाह्वय).<sup>436</sup>
- 36 And realgar (मनःशिला) mixed with elixir salve (रसाञ्जन) and honey is a liquid collyrium (द्रवाञ्जन) which is, in this case, combined with mahua (मधूक).<sup>437</sup>  
Alternatively, experts on this say that finely ground blue vitriol (तुत्य) extracted from a gold mine is the “same collyrium (समाञ्जन)”.<sup>438</sup>
- 37 Conch mixed with equal parts of sheep’s horn and stibnite (अञ्जन) removes the impurity of the glassy opacity (काच) because of the applic-

433 This verse contain irresolvable difficulties. There are no significant variants in the Nepalese MS transmission, but the text is ungrammatical. The vulgate reads substantially differently but we have nevertheless made some emendations in line with it and read the verse as two sentences.

434 Ḍalhaṇa specified that the juices are meat soups of various animals (Su 1938: 628).

435 Ḍalhaṇa described this blindness as a type of *kāca* disease caused by wind (Su 1938: 628). The expression “bloodshot blindness” is an attempt to capture the idea of a blind eye that is dyed or coloured (not colour-blindness). This verse is quite different from the vulgate and also syntactically challenging.

436 The expression taken hot (पुटाह्वय) is a guess.

437 The expression liquid collyrium (द्रवाञ्जन) is only known from Ḍalhaṇa’s comments on 6.17.11ab (Su 1938: 626). The recipe in the present collyrium is different from that discussed by Ḍalhaṇa.

438 On *tuttha*, which may also be identified with zinc oxide or as crushed sea-urchin shells, see Falk (1991: 112 ff.); zinc oxide is a component of skin-balms but is not recommended for application in the eyes themselves. The expression “same collyrium (समाञ्जन)” is a hapax legomenon glossed inexplicably by Ḍalhaṇa as “a collyrium with an equal amount of fermented barley” (*tulyasauvīrāñjana*) (Su 1938: 628).



ation of collyrium (अञ्जन).<sup>439</sup>

The extracts (रस) produced from aflame of the forest (पलाश), Rohīta tree (रोहीत),<sup>440</sup> mahua (मधूक), ground with the supernatant layer (अग्र) of the spirits (मदिर) is applied.

- 38 Alternatively, one should cook an errhine with cuscus grass (उशीर), lodh tree (लोध्र), the three fruits (त्रिफला), beauty berry (प्रियङ्गु) to pacify eye diseases caused by phlegm.<sup>441</sup>

One should apply smoke of the bark of embelia (विदङ्ग), velvet leaf (पाथा), white siris (किनिही), and desert date (इङ्गदी); and cuscus grass (उशीर) alone.

- 39 A ghee that is cooked (भावित) from a decoction of a non-flowering tree (वनस्पति)<sup>442</sup> as well as turmeric (हरिद्रा) and spikenard (नलद) is good in a eyewash (तर्पण).

Alternatively, one may have an enclosed roasting (पुटपाक) done with arid-land animals (जाङ्गल)<sup>443</sup> and a plentiful amount of long pepper (मागध), Sindh salt and honey.

- 40 A treatment (क्रिया) with realgar (मनःशिला), the three spices, conch, honey, along with Sindh salt, green vitriol (कासीस) and elixir salve (रसाञ्जन).<sup>444</sup>

They say that an elixir salve (रसाञ्जन) combined with myrobalans, treacle and dried ginger is good.<sup>445</sup>

- 41 Alternatively, a collyrium that has been prepared many times in the eight types of urine<sup>446</sup> is put into water with the three fruits. Having stored it in the mouth of a nocturnal creature (निशाचर)<sup>447</sup> one should

find ref.

439 The ablative “from collyrium” is hard to construe, but Ḍalhaṇa used this term and phrase in his commentary on 6.17.41ab (Su 1938: 629).

440 Probably *Soymida febrifuga* A. Juss.

441 Ḍalhaṇa invoked a general rule (परिभाषा) to indicate that this mixture should be cooked with sesame oil.

442 These are fig trees. The *Sauśrutaniḥṣaṇṭu* (252) specifies the Uḍumbara. Cf. the classification in CS.1.1.71–72, 1.8, *et passim*.

443 On this term, see SS.1.35.42 (Su 1938: 157) and the discussion by Zimmermann (1999: 25–31).

444 Ḍalhaṇa glossed treatment (क्रिया) specifically as inspissation (रसक्रिया) (Su 1938: 629).

445 We emend हिते to हितम्, against the MSS.

446 See *Suśrutasaṃhitā* mūtravarga

447 Ḍalhaṇa glossed nocturnal creature (निशाचर) as “vulture,” although elsewhere in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* it is more commonly interpreted as a spirit or demon. In the present context, following verses 33 and 34, it is probably a snake.

place it in a conch (सलिलोत्थित) for two months.<sup>448</sup>

- 42 One should apply that collyrium together with the flowers of mahua (मधूक) and horseradish tree (शिग्रु) when [the disease] is caused by all [the humours].

But alternatively, all treatments apply when blood is the cause. The procedure that removes bile is good when there is blue dot cataract (म्लायिन).<sup>449</sup>

- 43 For one who has a humour, the physician should consider the rule in all humoral cases and then smear the ointment on the face.<sup>450</sup>

The treatment that is good for removing watery eye (स्यन्द) should be properly applied in all these humoral cases, according to the individual.<sup>451</sup>

- 44 The physician should not employ substances in errhines etc., when the humours intensify, and also when disease spreads. And further, in the *Kalpa*, there is a good deal more said about collyriums, and that should be considered and then applied.<sup>452</sup>

- 45 Someone who uses matured ghee, the three fruits, wild asparagus, as well as mung beans, emblic and barley has nothing to fear from cases of severe blindness (तिमिर).

- 46 Blindness is dispelled by milk prepared with wild asparagus or in emblics, or again cooked barley (यवौदन) followed by the water of three fruits with plenty of ghee.

- 47 When there is bloodshot blindness (रागिणि तिमिरे), the wise physician should not cut a vein. A humour injured (उत्पीडित) by the instrument rapidly destroys vision.

- 48 Non-bloodshot blindness (अरग तिमिर) in the first layer (पटल) is treatable. And bloodshot blindness (रागिणि तिमिरे) in the second layer, with difficulty. And in the third layer it can be mitigated (याप्य).<sup>453</sup>

448 We interpret “water-born (सलिलोत्थित)” as “conch” in line with *jalodbhava*, but the term is uncertain.

449 The vulgate follows Ḍaḥaṇa in glossing *mlāyin* as *parimlāya*. The description of this condition at SS.6.7.27–28 appears to refer to “blue dot” or “cerulean” cataract. √*mlai* derivatives can mean “dark” or “black.”), which is normally a different ailment.

450 The vulgate edition omits part of this verse (ab) combining earlier and later passages.

451 The term watery eye (स्यन्द) refers to the specific disease *abhiṣyanda*. See SS.6.6.5, 1.46.51, etc.

452 Ḍaḥaṇa noted that *Kalpa* means the Uttaratantra adhyāya 18 (Su 1938: 633 ff).

453 Although the text says with difficulty (कृच्छ्र), the implication is that it is untreatable (असाध्य) (cf. 6.17.2 (Su 1938: 625) above). The three categories, treatable, untreatable

Check out these refs.

meaning of kalpa

- 49 I shall explain the therapy for success when there is a cataract (लिङ्गनाश) caused by phlegm. It may be white, like a full moon, an umbrella, a pearl (मुक्ता) or a spiral (आवर्त).
- 50 Or it may be uneven, thin in the middle, streaked or have excessive shine (प्रभ). A humour (दोष) in the pupil may be characterized as being painful or having blood.<sup>454</sup>
- 51–52 At a time that is neither too hot or too cold, the patient who has been oiled and sweated is restrained and seated, looking symmetrically at his own nose.  
The wise physician should separate (मुक्त्वा) two white sections from the black part (कृष्ण) and from the outer corner of the eye (अपाङ्ग). Then he should press (पीड्-) properly into the eye,<sup>455</sup> at the naturally-occurring (दैवकृते) opening (छिद्र) with a probe (शलाका) made of copper or iron, with a tip like a barley-corn, held by a steady hand with the middle finger, forefinger and thumb, the left one with the right hand and the other one contrariwise.  
When the piercing is done properly, there is the issue of a drop of liquid and a sound.<sup>456</sup>
- 55 The expert should moisten the exact place of piercing with a woman's breast-milk. Then he should scratch the circuit of the pupil (दृष्टिमण्डल) with the tip of the probe (शलाका).<sup>457</sup>
- 56 Without injuring, gently pushing the phlegm in the circuit of the pupil against the nose, he should remove it by means of sniffing (उच्छिङ्गन).<sup>458</sup>
- 57 Whether the humour is solid (स्त्यान) or liquid (चल), one should apply sweating to the eye externally, with leaves (भङ्ग) that remove wind, after

and possibly mitigated are standard categories of triage.

454 In the vulgate, and in parallel passages in the AS, the reading “it may be (भवेत्)” is replaced with the negative “if, then not (न चेद्)” (cf. utt.17.1–3a (As 1980: 712)). These characteristics are then read as conditions that preclude surgery; for the Nepalese recension, they are simply descriptions of the appearance of a cataract.

455 We understand the locative *nayane* as the place of pressing; other interpreters take it as an accusative dual. The idea is that the eye is held steady by the surgeon.

456 Ḍalhaṇa remarked on 6.17.61ab (Su 1938: 630) that when the piercing is not correctly done, blood issues and there is no sound.

457 The anatomy of the eye is described in 6.1.14–16 (Su 1938: 596). The disks or *maṇḍalas* are the circuits or disks of the eye.

458 Ḍalhaṇa described sniffing (उच्छिङ्गन) at 6.19.8 (Su 1938: 641), clearly intending inward sniffing.

- fixing the needle (सूची) properly.<sup>459</sup>
- 58 But if the humour cannot be destroyed or if it comes back, one should apply the piercing (व्यध) once again, with appropriate oils and so on.
- 59 Now the pupil (दृष्टि) shines like the sun (हरि) in a cloudless sky; then, when objects become visible, one may slowly remove the probe (शलाका).<sup>460</sup>
- 60 Having smeared ghee on the eye, one should cover it with a bandage. Then, he must lie down supine in a house free from disturbances.<sup>461</sup>
- 61 At that time, he should not belch, cough, sneeze, spit or shiver. Afterwards there should be restrictions (यन्त्रणा) as in the case of someone who has drunk oil.<sup>462</sup>
- 62 Every three days one should wash it with decoctions (कषाय) that remove wind. After three days, one should sweat the eye externally because of the danger of wind.
- 63 Having restrained himself in this way for ten days he should thereafter take a beneficial regimen (कर्म) that clears the pupil (दृष्टि) and also he should take light food in measure.

### [Complications]

- 64 When there is a misshapen eyeball (विलोचन), the eye may fill because of the release of blood from a vein.<sup>463</sup>

459 We interpret *bhaṅga* as leaves, following the usage elsewhere in this sthāna 4.32.9, 6.11.5 (Su 1938: 513, 614) where *bhaṅga* means shoots (पल्लव). A similar procedure is described at 6.17.25a (As 1980: 716a), where sweating of the eye is done by means of the leaves of a castor-oil plant.

460 There are many problems with the MS readings and interpretation of this half-verse. We have inferred “sky” and emended from “free from the point (अग्रमुक्त)” to “free from clouds (अभ्रमुक्त)”. The latter meaning is supported (in different words) by the vulgate and occurs elsewhere in Sanskrit literature.

461 Ḍaḥaṇa explained disturbances specifically as dust, smoke, drafts and sunlight 6.17.67 (Su 1938: 631a).

462 Ḍaḥaṇa glossed “restrictions (यन्त्रणा)” as having a controlled diet and the other restrictions appropriate to someone who is taking oil as a preparation before further therapy (6.17.68 (Su 1938: 631)). These restrictions are also described at 6.18.28 (Su 1938: 635) and 1.16.25cd (Ah 1939: 249).

463 The condition of “misshapen eye” is referred to briefly in 6.61.9 (Su 1938: 800), where Ḍaḥaṇa glossed it as “bent brow and eye (वक्रभ्रूनेत्र).” The vulgate’s reading of “with blood (शोणितेन)” is easier to construe.

- A hard probe leads to shooting pain (शूल), a thin to unsteadiness of the humours (दोषपरिप्लव),<sup>464</sup>
- 65 a thick-tipped probe leads to a large wound, and a sharp one may cause harm in many ways; a very irregular one may cause a discharge of water, a rigid (स्थिरा) one brings about a loss of function (क्रियासङ्ग).<sup>465</sup>
- 66 Therefore, one should make a good probe that is free from these defects.

### [Characteristics of the probe]

- The probe should be eight finger-breadths long and in the middle it is wrapped with thread and is as thick as a thumb joint. It is shaped like a bud at both ends (वक्र).
- 67 A commendable probe should be made of silver, iron or gold (शातकुम्भी).<sup>466</sup>

### [Complications]

- Redness, swelling, lumps, driness (चोष), bubbling (बुद्बुद),<sup>467</sup> pigs' eye (सूकराक्षिता),<sup>468</sup> irritation (अधिमन्थ), etc. and other diseases arise from faults in the piercing,
- 69–70 or even from bad behaviour. One should treat them each accordingly. Listen to me once again about compounds for painful red eyes. Red chalk (गैरिकः), Indian sarsaparilla (शारिवा), panic grass (दूर्वा), and ghee ground with barley.
- 71 This face ointment is to be used for quelling pain and redness. Or else it may be taken combined with the juice of citron (मातुलुङ्ग) with sesame gently fried, mixed with white mustard (सिद्धार्थक).<sup>469</sup> This is immediately beneficial when someone is looking for relief.

464 There is a medically significant difference here from the vulgate, which reads “a rough (खर) probe” not a “thin” probe.

465 This translation of loss of function (क्रियासङ्ग) is given on the basis of Ḍalhana's gloss of *kriyāsaṅgakarī* at 3.8.19 (Su 1938: 382) as “causing the destruction of actions such as moving (गमनादिक्रियाविनाशकरी).”

466 The vulgate reads “copper (ताम्र)” in place of “silver.”

467 Ḍalhana glossed “bubbling (बुद्बुद)” as “prolapse (मांसनिर्गम) that looks like bubbles.”

468 The expression “pigs' eye” appears to be a *hapax*. It was glossed as “downward vision (अधोदृष्टित्व)” by Ḍalhana.

469 On the adverbial use of gently (मृदु), see Gombrich 1979.

- 72 A paste with *Holostemma* (पयस्या),<sup>470</sup> Indian sarsaparilla (शारिवा), cassia cinnamon (पत्र), Indian madder (मज्जिष्ठा), and liquorice (मधुकैर्) stirred with goat's milk, pleasantly warmed, is said to be healthy.<sup>471</sup>
- 73 Alternatively, it can be made in this way with Himalayan cedar, Himalayan cherry (पद्मक) and dried ginger. Or, in the same way, with grapes, liquorice and the Lodh tree mixed with Sindh salt.
- 74 Alternatively, goats' milk with the Lodh tree, Sindh salt, red grapes and liquorice, cooked, should be used in irrigation because it removes pain and redness.
- 75 Having cooked it with liquorice, water-lily, and costus, mixed with grapes (द्राक्षा), lac (लाक्षा), white sugar (सिता), with wild asparagus, Hare Foot *Uraria* (पृथक्पर्णी),<sup>472</sup> nutgrass (मुस्ता), liquorice, Himalayan cherry (पद्मक), and Sindh salts, one should apply it [irrigation] gently warm.
- 76cd–77ab Ghee that has been cooked in four times the amount of milk that has itself been cooked with drugs that destroy wind.<sup>473</sup> This has an admixture of cottony jujube (काकाली) etc., should be prescribed in all treatments.<sup>474</sup>
- 77cd–78ab If pain does not end in this way, one should administer blood-letting to the vein of someone who has previously been oiled and sweated. Then the wise physician should apply cauterization in the advised manner.<sup>475</sup>
- 78cd–80ab Now listen to two excellent collyriums for making the pupils clear. After grinding the flowers of perploca of the woods (मेषशृङ्ग), siris

470 The identity of *payasyā* is debated (GVDB: 538), and was already in doubt at the time of Ḍaḥaṇa but likely candidates may be those suggested by Ḍaḥaṇa, who suggests either *arkapuṣpī* or *kṣīrakākolī*, that may be *Holostemma adakodien* Schult. and *Leptadenia reticulata* (Retz.) Wight & Arn. (ADPS: 195-196). The *Sauśrutaniḥaṇṭu* glosses it as *kṣīrikā* or *arkapuṣpikā* (Suvedī and Tivārī 2000: v. 307).

471 The expression “stirred with goat's milk (अजाक्षीरार्दित)” is difficult. It may be connected with the rare root *ard* documented by Whitney (1885: 15). Cf. *√ard gatau* (*Dhātupāṭha* 1.56).

472 Suvedī and Tivārī 2000: 18.

473 Ḍaḥaṇa mentioned that these drugs include Deodar (भद्रदारु) and other wind-destroying drugs. The *vātasamśamana* group is listed in *Suśrutasaṃhitā sūtrasthāna* 1.39.7.

474 Ḍaḥaṇa noted that this would include errhines, ointments, etc.

475 The vulgate reads *vāpi* for *cāpi*, so Ḍaḥaṇa saw blood-letting and cautery as alternatives, not a sequence of treatments. Ḍaḥaṇa listed the places that cauterization may be applied, such as the brow, forehead, etc.

(शिरीष), axelwood (धव) royal jasmine (जाती), pearl and beryl (वैडूर्य) with goat's milk, one should put it in a copper pot for seven days.

- 80cd–81 Having made it into wicks (वर्त्ति), the physician should apply it as a collyrium. Alternatively, one should make kohl (स्रोतोज), coral (विद्रुम), cuttlefish bone (फेन), and realgar (मनःशिला) and peppers into wicks as before. One should apply these wicks, which are good in a collyrium, to steady the pupil.

or a dual?

- 82 I shall again discuss the foremost collyriums at length in the *Kriyākalpa* section. Those various methods may be applied here too.





# Uttaratantra 38: Diseases of the Female Reproductive System

## Introduction

The chapter talks about various diseases of the female reproductive system and, in doing so, combines both aspects that go into a representation of diseases in āyurvedic literature: signs, symptoms and pathogenesis (*nīdāna*), on the one hand, and medical treatment (*cikitsā*), on the other. In chapters of the *Uttaratantra*, these two aspects are sometime dealt with in two different chapters *X-vijñānīya* and *X-pratiṣedha*. There are, however, many examples where this distinction is not made.

## Literature

The chapter is summarized, with notes on vocabulary and references to further research literature, in [HIML](#): IA, 313. (Tivārī 1990) dedicated a monograph to this topic, and Selby (2005a,b) has explored gynecological narratives in ayurveda.

## Placement of the Chapter

In the vulgate text (Su 1938) the current chapter, 6.38, is found after the *Uttaratantra*'s subsection on paediatrics, the *Kumāratantra*, see Table 3.<sup>476</sup> But in the Nepalese version, this is chapter 6.58 of the *Uttaratantra*. And it is also counted as chapter 23 of the subsection *Kāyācikitsā*.

---

<sup>476</sup> Or *Kumārabhṛtya* as this section is named in MS Kathmandu KL 699.

Table 3: Subdivisions of the Uttaratantra, in the vulgate.

Section	Chapters	Internal count
Śālakya tantra	1–26	1–26
Kumāratantra	27–38	1–12
Kāyacikitsā tantra	39–59	1–21
Bhūtavidyā tantra	60–62	1–3
Tantrabhūṣaṇādhyāya	63–66	1–4

Several things are noteworthy in this regard:

- In the placement of the vulgate, this chapter follows upon 6.37 *Grahotpatti* (6.35 in the Nepalese version), a chapter that talks about the origination of nine demons (ग्रह) that are responsible for all children's diseases described in previous chapters of the *Kumāratantra*. In this way, the current chapter retains the general focus on the child bearing (कौमारभृत्य), but, at the same time, marks a change to a distinct, less mystical approach to the topic at hand (that could originate in a cultural milieu different from that of the preceding eleven chapters). Ḍalhaṇa explained how the chapter fits its context in the following way:

It is appropriate that, for the sake of treating the disorders of the female reproductive system, the chapter called “Countermeasures Against Disorders of the Female Reproductive System” is taught immediately after the chapter called “The Origination of Demons (ग्रह).” It is because (1) there is an explicit mention of the word “*yonī*” in the statement “born in the womb (योनि) of animal and human” [in 6.37.13bc (Su 1938: 667)] and because (2) the disorders of the female reproductive system are the causes for the inborn disorders of children.<sup>477</sup>

- In the placement of the Nepalese version,
  - 6. *Yonivyāpatpratiṣedha* is preceded by

<sup>477</sup> Ḍalhaṇa on 6.38.1 (Su 1938: 668): ग्रहोत्पत्त्यध्यायानन्तरं ‘तिर्यग्योनिं मानुषं च’ इति वचनेन योने-  
र्नामसंकीर्तनात् कुमारजन्मविकारकारणत्वाच्च योनेर्व्यापञ्चिकित्सितार्थं योनिव्यापत्प्रतिषेधाध्यायारम्भो यु-  
ज्यत [...]

- 6.56 *Mūtrāghātapraṭiṣedha* (6.58 in [Su 1938](#)) and
- 6.57 *Mūtrakṛcchrapraṭiṣedha* (6.59 in [Su 1938](#)), two chapters dealing with the diseases of the urinary tract.

The current chapter carries on with the topic of diseases that affect genitalia. In its Nepalese version, the chapter opens with two verses that explain the reasons for treating the particular set of diseases. These lack any reference to the inborn disorders of children, mentioned by Ḍalhaṇa, and instead highlight the importance of curing female diseases for the satisfaction of male partner.

- SS.1.3 in both [Su 1938](#) and the Nepalese version lists the chapter at the place where it is found in the vulgate.<sup>478</sup>
- Parallel chapters in the *Aṣṭāṅgasamgraha* and the *Aṣṭāṅgahṛdayasamhitā* form a part of the *Śalyatantra* section of each text.

## Parallels

The current chapter is parallel in its content to *Aṣṭāṅgasamgraha* 6.38 and 6.39 as well as *Aṣṭāṅgahṛdayasamhitā* 6.33 and 6.34 (*Guhyarogavijñāna* and *Guhyarogapraṭiṣedha* respectively).

A close literary parallel to the first part of the chapter is found in *Mādhavanidāna* ([MN<sub>3</sub>](#)) 62, or at least its version printed in Y. T. Ācārya ([MN<sub>3</sub>](#): 361). The readings of the [MN<sub>3</sub>](#) as it stands now usually side with the vulgate version rather than with the Nepalese. In addition to the basic text, there are several valuable pointers made in the *Madhukośa*, an early commentary on the [MN<sub>3</sub>](#). This part of the text is authored by Śrīkaṇṭhadatta, who was most like a direct student of Vijarakṣita. The latter wrote the first part of the *Madhukośa*, up to chapter 32, and, what is more, can be dated to the late eleventh or early twelfth centuries.<sup>479</sup>

Another most interesting parallel is found in *Carakasamhitā* 6(Ci).30.

<sup>478</sup> See 1.3.37ab ([Su 1938](#): 15): नैगमेषचिकित्सा च ग्रहोत्पत्तिः सयोनिजा ॥.

<sup>479</sup> Meulenbeld [1974b](#): 22–26.

## Philological notes

### Metrical alterations

The first two verses in the Nepalese version, 6.38.2.1 and 6.38.4.1, are written in a classical variety of the *upajāti* metre:  $\underline{\text{U}}\text{—}\underline{\text{U}}\text{—}\underline{\text{U}}\text{—}\underline{\text{U}}\text{—}\underline{\text{U}}\text{—}$ . In content, they are only approximately parallel to three hemistichs in *anuṣṭubh* metre found in the vulgate.<sup>480</sup> The latter verses lack the apologetic explanation concerning the reasons for this chapter being taught.

### The original opening verses

From verse *Suśrutasamhitā* 6.38.5.1 onwards, the Nepalese version of the text continues with three hemistichs in the same classical *upajāti* metre (the syllabic pattern above).<sup>481</sup> By contrast, the vulgate contains two complete verses (four hemistichs) in the *anuṣṭubh* metre, again with only loosely-related content.<sup>482</sup> The three final hemistichs of this group are borrowed verbatim from the *Carakasamhitā*.<sup>483</sup> We can be sure of the direction of borrowing because one of these shared verses says that the twenty kinds of diseases of the female reproductive system “have already been indicated in the *Compendium of Diseases* (रोगसंग्रह)”.<sup>484</sup> This statement does not make any sense in the context of the *Suśrutasamhitā*, where no such Compendium exists.<sup>485</sup> By contrast, in the *Carakasamhitā* this reference points back to chapter 1.19 ([Ca 1941: 109–112](#)), which calls itself “The Compendium of Diseases”.<sup>486</sup> This Compendium lists all the diseases dealt with in later sections of the text, and specifically mentions the twenty diseases of female reproductive system.<sup>487</sup> Even the vocabulary and wording of this passage

480 *Suśrutasamhitā* 6.38.3–4ab ([Su 1938: 668](#)).

481 The metre of these verses is not perfect.

482 *Suśrutasamhitā* 6.38.4cd–6ab ([Su 1938: 668](#)).

483 *Carakasamhitā* 6.30.7cd–8 ([Ca 1941: 634](#)).

484 *Suśrutasamhitā* 6.38.5ab ([Su 1938: 668](#)): विंशतिर्व्यापदो योनेर्निर्दिष्टा रोगसंग्रहे ॥ ← *Carakasamhitā* 6.30.7cd ([Ca 1941: 634](#)).

485 The remark was not commented on by Ḍalhaṇa.

486 *Carakasamhitā* 1.19.9cd ([Ca 1941: 112](#)): रोगाध्याये प्रकाशिताः.

487 *Carakasamhitā* 1.19.3 ([Ca 1941: 110](#)): विंशतिर्योन्यापदः ।

is identical to the later verses. It is beyond doubt that this passage originated in the *Carakasamhitā* and was borrowed by the editors of the vulgate text of the *Suśrutasamhitā*.<sup>488</sup>

---

<sup>488</sup> The above three hemistichs in *anuṣṭubh* are also repeated in the *MN*<sub>3</sub> 62.1–2ab. Given that the subsequent verses in the *MN*<sub>3</sub> stem from the *Suśrutasamhitā*, it is likely that *MN*<sub>3</sub> 62.1–2ab too was borrowed from from the *Suśrutasamhitā* and not from its original location in the *Carakasamhitā*).

## Translation

- 1 And now I shall explain the countermeasures against disorders of the female reproductive system (योनिव्यापत्).<sup>489</sup>
- \*3 Since for good men, a woman is the most pleasurable thing, therefore a physician should diligently attend to the diseases located in the female reproductive system (योनि), because he is entirely devoted to it (that is, to curing these diseases) for the sake of (people's) happiness.<sup>490</sup>
- \*4 A corrupted female reproductive system (योनि) cannot consume semen (बीज), and therefore, the woman cannot take a fetus (that is, become pregnant). She gets severe prolapses (अर्शस्), abdominal lump (गुल्म) and similarly many other diseases (रोग).
- \*5 Humours (दोष), wind (वात), etc., corrupted due to faulty medical treatment (मिथ्योपचार),<sup>491</sup> sexual activity, fate, and also defects (दोष) of menstrual blood (आर्तव) and semen (बीज), produce various diseases in the female reproductive organ (योनि). These 20 diseases are taught here distinctly and one by one along with their treatment (भेषज), causes

489 On this broad understanding of the term *yoni* as “female reproductive system” see Das 2003: pp. 572–5.

490 As our translation indicates, the sentence construction does not allow an unambiguous identification of who or what is the referent of the pronoun *tad* in the compound form *tadadhīna* ‘devoted to it.’ Our current understanding is that *tad* refers to the ‘most pleasurable thing’ mentioned in pāda a. It could, however, also refer to ‘them,’ that is, the ‘good men.’

491 In our translation of the compound मिथ्योपचार, we decided for the technical meaning of the term उपचार, that is, “medical application” or “treatment.” The combination मिथ्या+उप-√चर् is attested several times in medical literature. At least once, at *Carakasamhitā* 3.3.38 (Ca 1941: 245), it is given an explicit gloss by Cakrapāṇidatta: मिथ्योपचरितानिति असम्यक् चिकित्सितान् “... given improper therapy”. In the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* (Su 1938), it is used once in a passage (6.18.30 (Su 1938: 635)) where it refers specifically to the wrong application of irrigation (तर्पण) and roasting (पुटपाक), both of which are mentioned in the previous verse. Another use of the compound in a similar meaning is found in a citation from Bhoja’s work quoted by Gayadāsa at *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 2.5.17 (Su 1938: 287): श्वित्रं तु द्विविधं प्रोक्तं दोषजं व्रणजं तथा । तत्र मिथ्योपचाराद्धि व्रणस्य व्रणजं स्मृतम् ॥ “... arises from wrong treatment of the wound.” In contrast to this, the parallel verse in *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 6.38.5ab (Su 1938: 668) = *Carakasamhitā* 6.30.8 (Ca 1941: 634) = MN<sub>3</sub> 62.1 reads मिथ्याचार “wrong conduct.” All commentators (Cakrapāṇidatta on the *Carakasamhitā*, Śrīkaṇṭhadatta on the MN<sub>3</sub>, and Ḍalhaṇa on the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*) explain that the wrong conduct stands here specifically for unwholesome diet. The parallel in *Aṣṭāṅgahṛdayasaṃhitā* 6.33.27 (Ah 1939: 895) = *Aṣṭāṅgasaṃgraha* 6.38.34a (As 1980: 829) plainly reads दुष्टभोजन “corrupted food” instead.

(हेतु) and signs (चिह्न).

\*6.1 Because of wind (वात), female reproductive organ (योनि) becomes:

1. udāvartā (उदावर्ता),
2. called Infertile (वन्ध्या), and
3. Sprung (प्लुता),
4. Flooded (परिप्लुता), and
5. Windy (वातला).

\*6.2 And because of choler (पित्त), occur:

1. With bloodloss (रक्तक्षया),
2. Vomiting (वामिनी), and
3. Causing a Fall (संसनी),
4. Child-murderess (पुत्रघ्नी), and also
5. Bilious / Choleric (पित्तला).

\*7.1 And because of phlegm (कफ) occur:

1. Extremely Excited (अत्यानन्दा),
2. Protuberant (कर्णिनी), and
3. & 4. two Caraṇī (चरणी), and
5. other Phlegmatic (श्लेष्मला).

\*7.2 And similarly there are other (kinds of morbid female reproductive system) involving all *doṣas*:

1. Impotent (शण्डी),
2. With testicles (अण्डीनी),
3. two Huge (महती),
4. With a needle-like opening (सूचीवक्त्रा),
5. Sarvātmikā (सर्वात्मिका).

# Uttaratantra 65: Rules of Interpretation

## Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.<sup>451</sup> Earlier explorations of this topic include Nārāyaṇa 1949; Dasgupta 1952; Oberhammer 1967–68; Muthuswami 1976; Lele 1981; Scharfe 1993; Mejer 2000; A. Singh 2003.

Preisendanz (2013: 105–106, fn. 109) provided further references to the discussion of *yukti* in Buddhist literatures. Manevskaia (2008) gave examples of the use of *tantrayuktis* in Buddhist commentarial literature.

## Terminology

## Characteristics of the Manuscript Transmission

## Translation

- 1 Now we shall explain the chapter called, “the enunciation of the logical methods of the system (तन्त्रयुक्ति).”
- 3 There are thirty-two logical methods of the system. They are as follows:
  - topic (अधिकरण)
  - construing (योग)
  - word meaning (पदार्थ)

---

<sup>451</sup> [HIML](#): IA, 331.



- premise (हेत्वर्थ)
- mention (समुद्देश)
- description (निर्देश)
- prescription (उपदेश)
- statement of reason (अपदेश)
- indication (प्रदेश)
- prediction (अतिदेश)
- exception (अपवर्ग)
- ellipsis (वाक्यशेष)
- implication (अर्थापत्ति)
- contraposition (विपर्यय)
- recontextualization (प्रसङ्ग)
- invariable statement (एकान्त)
- variable statement (अनेकान्त)
- objection (पूर्वपक्ष)
- determination (निर्णय)
- consent (अनुमत)
- itemization (विधान)
- future reference (अनागतापेक्षण)
- past reference (अतिक्रान्तापेक्षण)
- doubt (संशय)
- explication (व्याख्यान)
- field-specific term (स्वसंज्ञा)
- interpretation (निर्वचन)
- illustration (निदर्शन)
- compulsion (नियोग)
- option (विकल्प)
- aggregation (समुच्चय)
- deducible (ऊह्य)

4 It is said about this, “what is the purpose of these methods?” The answer is, “construing sentences and construing meanings”.<sup>452</sup>

5-6 There are **two** verses about this:

*The logical methods of the system prohibit statements employed by*

<sup>452</sup> Ḍaḥaṇa on 6.65.4 (Su 1938: 815) explained “construing a sentence” as “connecting up a sentence that is not connected,” and “construing a meaning” as “clarifying or making appropriate a meaning that is implied or inappropriate.”

*people who do not speak the truth. They also bring about the validity of one's own statements. And they also clarify meanings that are stated back to front, that are implicit, unclear and any that are partially stated.*

- 8 Among them, “topic (अधिकरण)” refers to the object, with reference to which statements are made, such as flavour (रस) or humour (दोष).<sup>453</sup>
- 9 “Construing (योग)” is that by which a sentence is construed, as when words that are in a reversed order, whether placed close or apart, have their meanings unified.

Sesame oil he should drink, with heart-leaved moonseed,  
neem tree, maidenhair fern, Indrajao, and long pepper

that is cooked with heart-leaf sida and country mallow, and  
deodar, always for a benefit in the case of the disease goitre.

In this verse, one ought to say, first, “one should drink cooked....” However, the word “cooked” is used in the second line.<sup>454</sup> Unifying the meanings of words in this way, even though they are far apart, is construing.

- 10 The meaning that is conveyed in an aphorism (सूत्र) or a word is called word-meaning (पदार्थ). In other words, word-meaning is the meaning of one or more words. Word-meanings are unlimited.

Where two or three meanings such as ‘fat,’ ‘sweat’ or ‘anointment’ appear to be possible, the valid meaning is the one that construes with prior and subsequent elements.<sup>455</sup> For example, when it is said that, “We are going to explain the chapter on the *veda*-origin” the mind may be confused about which “*veda*” will be spoken about. *Sāmaveda* and so on are the Vedas. Taking note of the prior and subsequent elements, the two roots *vind* “find” and *vid* “know” have a single meaning. Subsequently, the understanding takes place that there is a wish to talk about the origin of āyurveda. So that is the meaning of the word.<sup>456</sup>

453 The idea here is that “*rasa*” may be the topic of a chapter, and statements in that chapter are all understood to be about that topic

454 The Nepalese version reads द्वितीये पादे which would properly mean the second quarter of the first line; the vulgate reads “third quarter” which seems more correct.

455 There is a dangling relative clause, यो ऽर्थः, in the Nepalese version that is avoided in the vulgate recension by the addition of स ग्रहीतव्यः.

456 The Nepalese text here is hard to follow, and the vulgate has a significantly different

See also  
Dalhaṇa  
at 1.1.1  
(Su 1938:1)

- 11 The sense of the cause (हेत्वर्थ) is a statement that is a premiss (साधन). For example, just as a lump of earth is moistened by water, so a wound is moistened by substances like milk with green gram.<sup>457</sup>
- 12 A mention (समुद्देश) is a brief statement such as “spike (शल्य)”.<sup>458</sup>
- 13 A description (निर्देश) is a detailed statement. For example, “in the body or exogenous”.<sup>459</sup>
- 14 “Prescription (उपदेश)” refers to statements like “it should be this way.” For example, one should not stay awake at night; one should not sleep during the day.
- 15 “Statement of reason (अपदेश)” refers to statements like “this happens because of this.” For example, in the sentence “Sweet substances increase phlegm,” the reason is stated.<sup>460</sup>
- 16 Substantiation of the subject matter through past evidence is “indication (प्रदेश).” For example, he pulled out Devadatta’s splinter (शल्य), therefore he will pull out Yajñadatta’s.
- 17 Substantiation of the subject matter through a future event is “prediction (अतिदेश).” For example, if his wind moves upwards, that will cause

reading. But the problem situation seems to be as follows. The *Suśrutasaṃhitā* opens with a statement saying that it will describe the “origin of the *veda*” (*vedotpatti*). The problem is, what does this word “*veda*” refer to? Is it the Veda, as in Sāmaveda? Or something derived from the roots √vind or √vid? Context (“prior and subsequent elements”) can help us to know that “*veda*” means only “*āyurveda*” and that the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* is talking about the origin of ayurveda, specifically. This same issue is also addressed by Dalhaṇa at 1.1.1 (Su 1938:1).

457 The way this principle is expressed here seems to be describing the application of a general principle (water makes things wet) to a specific context. We can know the moistening of a wound because we know the more general case of moistening earth. However, etymologically, हेत्वर्थ does not mean “analogy,” but rather, something like “purpose of the reason.” The phrase “the sense of cause” that we have used leans on the use of the term in commentaries on the *Aṣṭādhyāyī* (*Kaumudī* on 2.3.23). The vulgate of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* rewrites the principle, making it clearer that the principle means “clarification by analogy.” Cf. also Cakrapāṇi’s discussion at Si.12.41 (Ca 1941: 736), where he explained the principle as using an explanation from one situation to clarify another situation. Cf. *Arthaśāstra* 5.1.13 (Olivelle 2013: 436), which is also unclear.

458 Generally, शल्य refers to any painful foreign body embedded in the flesh that requires surgical removal.

459 This is a reference to 1.26.4 (Su 1938: 121) where शल्य is described in more detail as being of two kinds.

460 A technical term also in *Nyāyaśāstra* (Jhalakīkar 1978: 54).

- him to have colic.”<sup>461</sup>
- 18 A deviation after generalization is exception (अपवर्ग). For example, those afflicted by poison should not go through sudorific treatment other than the cases of poisoning by urinary worms.
- 19 Ellipsis (वाक्यशेष) refers to an unstated word that completes a sentence. For example, despite not mentioning the word ‘person’, when mentioning someone as ‘the one having a head, hands, feet, flanks, and abdomen,’ it’s apparent that the reference is to a person.
- 20 arthāpatti (इम्प्लिचिओन्) refers to an unstated idea that becomes evident through context. For example, when one said, “We will eat rice” it becomes evident from the context that he did not wish to drink gruel.
- 21 When there is the reversal of it it is contraposition (विपर्यय). For example, when it is said, “Weak, dyspneic, and fearful people are difficult to treat,” the converse holds true: “Those who are strong and so on are easily treatable.”
- 22 Recontextualization (प्रसङ्ग) refers to a concept common to another section. For example, a concept belonging to another section is brought up by mentioning it repeatedly throughout.
- 23 Invariable statement (एकान्त) is one that is stated with certainty. For example, *turpeth* causes purgation; *emetic nut* induces vomiting.
- 24 Variable statement (अनेकान्त) is one that is true in one way in some cases and in another way elsewhere. For example, some teachers identify the main element as substance, others as fluid, some as semen, and some as digestion.
- 25 A first point of view (पूर्वपक्ष) is something stated with certainty. For example, how are the four types of diabetes caused by wind incurable?<sup>462</sup>
- 26 Its answer is determination. For example, afflicting the body and trickling downwards, it creates urine mixed with fat, fatty tissues, and marrow. Thus, those caused by wind are incurable.
- 28 Consent (अनुमत) refers to others’ opinion that is not rejected. For example, when the assertor says that there are six flavours and that somehow gets accepted with affirmation, it is termed consent.
- 29 Itemization (विधान) refers to sequentially ordered statements within a

See chapter  
40 of Sūtra-  
sthāna.

vasā / me-  
das / maj-  
jan

<sup>461</sup> A technical term also in Nyāyaśāstra (Jhalakīkar 1978: 6–7).

<sup>462</sup> The adverb निःसंशयम् is problematic: the example expresses a query or doubt, the opposite of certainty, which is answered in the next passage. It would seem to make more sense to read something like यस् तु संशयम् अभिधीयते स पूर्वपक्षः, but our manuscripts are unanimous in their reading.

chapter. For example, the eleven lethal points of thigh are mentioned sequentially in a chapter.

- 30 A statement like “Thus will be stated” is future reference (अनागतापेक्षण) such as when he says in the *Sūtrasthāna*, “I will mention it in the *Cikitsāsthāna*.”
- 31 A statement like “Thus has been stated” is past reference (अतिक्रान्तापेक्षण) such as when one says in the *Cikitsāsthāna*, “As mentioned in the *Sūtrasthāna*....”
- 32 An indication pointing to causes on both sides is doubt (संशय). For example, a blow to <sup>463</sup> is fatal, whereas cutting hands and feet is not fatal.
- 33 An elaborate description is explication (व्याख्यान). For example, the twenty-fifth entity, , is being explicated here. Thus, no other Āyurvedic texts discuss entities beginning with matters.
- 34 Field-specific term (स्वसंज्ञा) is uncommon in other field of studies. The term used in one’s own systems is called field-specific term, such as in this system, denotes honey and ghee, and denotes ghee, sesame oil and fat.
- 35 A customary portrayal is interpretation (निर्वचन). For example, one goes along the shade fearing heat.
- 36 Providing examples is illustration (निदर्शन). For example, just as fire spreads rapidly in a dry forest when accompanied by wind, a wound intensifies affected by wind, bile, and phlegm.
- 37 A statement like “This is the only way...” ...compulsion (नियोग). For example, one should consume only a healthy diet.
- 39 A statement like “This and this...” is option (विकल्प). For example, in the section on meat, the major ones are blackbuck, deer, quail and part-ridge.<sup>464</sup>
- 38 A summarized statement is aggregation (समुच्चय).<sup>465</sup> For example, let there be rice with meat broth, rice with milk, or burley with ghee.

Does  
bhūtādi a  
compound  
or it means  
ahankāra or  
ego?

A meaningful reading of these two rules would be

463 तलहृदय is one of the muscle-group of lethal points mentioned in 3.6.7 (Su 1938: 370).

464 The example here matches समुच्चय (next text), not विकल्प. There seems to have been a metathesis of terms. Y. T. Ācārya and N. R. Ācārya (Su 1945: 1005, footnote 6) notes that this text and the next have been swapped in the Calcutta edition that includes Hārāṇacandra’s commentary Bhaṭṭācārya 1910–17: 2, in the same way as in the Nepalese version.

465 As stated in the previous footnote, the example here is of विकल्प, not समुच्चय.

39 idaṃ vedaṃ veti vikalpaḥ / yathā rasodanaḥ kṣīrodanaḥ  
saghr̥tā vā yavāgūr bhavatv iti //

38 saṃkṣepavacanāṃ samuccayaḥ / yathā māṃsavarge eṇa-  
hariṇālāvatittirāḥ pradhānā iti

- 40 What is not explicitly stated but can be understood through discernment is deducible (ऊह्य). For example, in the section on rules of foods and drinks, four types of foods and drinks are mentioned— masticable (भक्ष्य), edible (भोज्य), suckable (लेह्य), and drinkable (पेय). Thus, while four types are needed to be stated, two types are actually mentioned. Here it is deducible that in the section on foods and drinks, by specifically mentioning two types, the four types are also mentioned. Furthermore, a masticable item is not excluded from the category of food because it shares the same characteristic of solidity. A suckable item is not excluded from being classified as a drink because it shares the same characteristic of liquidity. Four types of aliments are rare. They are usually just twofold. Therefore, lord Dhanvantari says “Twofold is popular”.



## Editions and Abbreviations

- Ah 1939 Kumṭe, Aṇṇā Moreśvara, Navare, Kṛṣṇaśāstrī, and Parādkar, Hariśāstrī (1939) (eds.), *श्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितम् अष्टाङ्गहृदयम्, श्रीमदरुणदत्तविरचितया सर्वाङ्गसुन्दराख्यया व्याख्यया, हेमाद्रिप्रणीतया आयुर्वेदरसायनाह्वया टीकया च समुल्लसितम्* = *The Astāṅgahṛidaya* (6th edn., Mumbayyām: Nirṇayasāgara Press), [ark:/13960/t3tt6967d](https://nirṇayasāgara.org/ark:/13960/t3tt6967d).
- Anup *Anup Sanskrit Library*.
- Apte Apte, Vaman Shivaram (1992), *The Practical Sanskrit-English Dictionary* (Kyoto: Rinsen Book Company), ISBN: 4-653-00038-7; Reprinted from Gode and Karve 1957–59.
- AS *Asiatic Society*.
- As 1980 Āṭhavale, Ananta Dāmodara (1980) (ed.), *अष्टाङ्गसङ्ग्रहः श्रीमद्वाग्भटविरचितः इन्दुव्याख्यासहितः* [= *Vāgbhaṭa's Aṣṭāṅgasaṅgraha with Indu's Commentary*] (Pune: M. A. Āṭhavale, Śrīmad Ātreya Prakāśanam), [ark:/13960/s25bwqsd0n7](https://nirṇayasāgara.org/ark:/13960/s25bwqsd0n7).
- AyMahā Jośī, Veṇīmādhavaśāstrī, and Jośī, Nārāyaṇa Harī (1968), *आयुर्वेदीय महाकोशः अर्थात् आयुर्वेदीय शब्दकोशः संस्कृत-संस्कृत* (Mumbaī: Mahārāṣṭra Rājya Sāhitya āṇi Saṁskṛti Maṇḍala), [ark:/13960/t22c41g8t](https://nirṇayasāgara.org/ark:/13960/t22c41g8t).
- Bhela 1921 Mookerjee, Ashutosh, and Ananta Krishna Shastri, Ved-antabisharad (1921) (eds.), *The Bhela Samhita. Sanskrit Text* (Calcutta: University of Calcutta), [ark:/13960/t3sv3157j](https://nirṇayasāgara.org/ark:/13960/t3sv3157j); Based on two copies made of the Thanjavur codex unicus (MS Thanjavur TMSSML 10773, Burnell 1880: 63–4, P. P. S. Sastri 1933: #11085).



- Bhela 2000 Krishnamurthy, K. H. (2000), *Bhela-saṃhitā. Text with English Translation, Commentary and Critical Notes* (Haridas Ayurveda Series, 8; Varanasi: Chaukhambha Visvabharati).
- BL *British Library.*
- Ca 1941 Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikrama (1941) (ed.), *महर्षिणा पुनर्वसुनोपदिष्टा, तच्छिष्येणाग्रिवेशेन प्रणीता, चरकदृढबलाभ्यां प्रतिसंस्कृता चरकसंहिता, श्रीचक्रपाणिदत्तविरचितया आयुर्वेददीपिकाव्याख्यया संवलिता* (3rd edn., Mumbayyām: Nirnaya Sagara Press), [ark:/13960/t48q2f20n](https://nir.nir.org/ark:/13960/t48q2f20n).
- CDIAL Turner, R. L. (1966–85), *A Comparative Dictionary of the Indo-Aryan Languages* (London, New York, Toronto: Oxford University Press), ISBN: 0197135501, [URL](https://nir.nir.org/ark:/13960/t48q2f20n); With *Indexes* compiled by Dorothy Rivers Turner (OUP, London, 1969), *Phonetic Analysis* by R. L. and D. R. Turner (OUP, London, 1971), and *Addenda and Corrigenda* edited by J. C. Wright (School of Oriental and African Studies, London, 1985).
- DED<sub>2</sub> Burrow, Thomas, and Emeneau, Murray B. (1984), *A Dravidian Etymological Dictionary* (2nd edn., Oxford: Clarendon Press), [ark:/13960/t4wj06g26](https://nir.nir.org/ark:/13960/t4wj06g26), [URL](https://nir.nir.org/ark:/13960/t4wj06g26).
- EWA Mayrhofer, Manfred (1986–2001), *Etymologisches Wörterbuch des Altindoarischen* (Heidelberg: Carl Winter, Universitätsverlag), ISBN: 3-533-03826-2.
- Garuḍapurāṇa* Pāṇḍeya, Rāmateja (1963) (ed.), *श्रीकृष्णद्वैपायनव्यासप्रणीतं गरुडपुराणम्* (Vidyabhawan Prachyavidya Granthamala, 3; reprint, Caukhambā Vidyābhavana, Paṇḍita-Pustakālaya: Kāśī), [ark:/13960/t6pz7tg7j](https://nir.nir.org/ark:/13960/t6pz7tg7j).
- HIML Meulenbeld, Gerrit Jan (1999–2002), *A History of Indian Medical Literature*, 5 vols. (Groningen: E. Forsten), ISBN: 9069801248.
- IOLR Eggeling, Julius, et al. (1887–1935), *Catalogue of the Sanskrit Manuscripts in the Library of the India Office* (London: Secretary of State for India), [ark:/13960/s2kbb5zcrg9](https://nir.nir.org/ark:/13960/s2kbb5zcrg9).

- KEWA Mayrhofer, Manfred (1953–72), *Kurzgefaßtes etymologisches Wörterbuch des Altindoarischen; a Concise Etymological Sanskrit Dictionary* (Heidelberg: Carl Winter, Universitätsverlag).
- KL *Kaiser Library.*
- Mānasollāsa Shrigondekar, Gajanan K. (1925–61) (ed.), *मानसोल्लासः = Mānasollāsa [or Abhilaṣitārthacintāmaṇi] of King Someśvara* (Gaekwad's Oriental Series; Baroda: Oriental Institute), [ark:/13960/t87h8tn95](http://ark:/13960/t87h8tn95); v. 2: [ark:/13960/t3gz41v8m](http://ark:/13960/t3gz41v8m).
- MN<sub>1</sub> Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikrama (1920) (ed.), *महामति-श्रीमाधवकरप्रणीतं माधवनिदानम् श्रीविजयरक्षित-श्रीकण्ठदत्ताभ्यां विरचितया मधुकोशाख्यव्याख्यया, श्रीवाचस्पतिवैद्यविरचितया आतङ्कदर्पणव्याख्याया विशिष्टांशेन च समुल्लसितम् = Mādhavanidāna by Mādhavakara with the Two Commentaries, Madhukosha by Vijayarakshita & Shrikanthadatta and Ātankadarpaṇa by Vāchaspati Vaidya* (1st edn., Bombay: Nirnaya Sagara Press), [ark:/13960/t9z08jn5j](http://ark:/13960/t9z08jn5j).
- MN<sub>3</sub> Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikrama (1932) (ed.), *महामति-श्रीमाधवकरप्रणीतं माधवनिदानम् श्रीविजयरक्षित-श्रीकण्ठदत्ताभ्यां विरचितया मधुकोशाख्यव्याख्यया, श्रीवाचस्पतिवैद्यविरचितया आतङ्कदर्पणव्याख्याया विशिष्टांशेन च समुल्लसितम् = Mādhavanidāna by Mādhavakara with the Two Commentaries, Madhukosha by Vijayarakshita & Shrikanthadatta and Ātankadarpaṇa by Vāchaspati Vaidya* (3rd edn., Bombay: Nirnaya Sagara Press), [ark:/13960/t66452x0h](http://ark:/13960/t66452x0h); Reprinted Varanasi: Chowkhambha, 1986.
- MW Monier-Williams, Monier, Leumann, E., Cappeller, C., et al. (1899), *A Sanskrit–English Dictionary Etymologically and Philologically Arranged, New Edition* (Oxford: Clarendon Press); 1970 reprint.
- NAK *National Archives of Kathmandu.*
- NCC Raghavan, V., et al. (1949–), *New Catalogus Catalogorum, an Alphabetical Register of Sanskrit and Allied Works and Authors,*

- 39 vols. (Madras University Sanskrit Series; Madras: University of Madras); v.1: revised edition, 1968. Searchable at <https://vmlt.in/ncc/>.
- NGMCP NGMCP (2014), "Nepal-german Manuscript Cataloguing Project. Online Title List and Descriptive Catalogue," Universität Hamburg and Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft, [URL](#).
- PW Böhrtlingk, Otto, and Roth, Rudolph (1855–75), *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch* (St. Petersburg: Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften), [URL](#), accessed 18/05/2023.
- PWK Böhrtlingk, Otto (1879), *Sanskrit-wörterbuch in kürzerer fassung* (St. Petersburg: Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften), [URL](#), accessed 18/05/2023.
- RORI *Rajasthan Oriental Research Institute*.
- Su 1889 Bhaṭṭācāryya, Jīvānanda Vidyāsāgara (1889) (ed.), *सुश्रुतः सूत्र-निदान-शारीर-चिकित्सा-कल्पोत्तर-तन्त्र-कल्पित आयुर्वेद. भगवता धन्वन्तरिणोपदिष्टः सुश्रुतनामधेयेन तच्छिष्येण विरचितः* (3rd edn., Calcutta: Saratī Press), [ark:/13960/t1nh6j09c](https://ncc.iiit.ac.in/ark:/13960/t1nh6j09c); [HIML](#): IB, 311, edition b.
- Su 1915 Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikrama (1915) (ed.), *सुश्रुतसंहिता, सुश्रुतेन विरचिता, वैद्यवरश्रीडल्हणाचार्यविरचितया निबन्धसंग्रहाख्य-व्याख्यया समुल्लसिता, आचार्योपाह्वेन त्रिविक्रमात्मजेन यादवशर्मणा संशोधिता* = *The Sushrutasamhitā of Sushruta, the Nibandhasangraha Commentary of Shri Dalhaṇāchārya* (Mumbayyām: Nirṇayasāgaramudrāyantrālaye), [ark:/13960/t3sv0mt50](https://ncc.iiit.ac.in/ark:/13960/t3sv0mt50), accessed 29/07/2020; [HIML](#): IB, 312 edition \*v.
- Su 1931 Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikrama (1931) (ed.), *सुश्रुत-संहिता, वैद्यवरश्रीडल्हणाचार्यविरचितया निबन्धसंग्रहाख्यव्याख्यया समुल्लसिता, महर्षिणा सुश्रुतेन विरचिता, सूत्र-निदान-शारीर-चिकित्सा-कल्पस्थानोत्तरतन्त्रात्मकः. आचार्योपाह्वेन त्रिविक्रमात्मजेन यादवशर्मणा संशोधिता* = *The Sushrutasamhitā of Sushruta with the Nibandhasangraha Commentary of Shree Dalhaṇāchārya* (2nd edn., Mumbayyām: Pāṇḍuraṅga Jāvajī at the Nirṇayasāgaramudrāyantrālaye), [ark:/13960/t9j41sg94](https://ncc.iiit.ac.in/ark:/13960/t9j41sg94), accessed 09/06/2020; [HIML](#): IB, 312 edition \*v.

- Su 1938 Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikrama, and Ācārya, Nārāyaṇa Rāma (1938) (eds.), *श्रीडल्हणाचार्यविरचितया निबन्धसंग्रहाख्यव्याख्यया निदानस्थानस्य श्रीगयदासाचार्यविरचितया न्यायचन्द्रिकाख्यपञ्जिकाव्याख्यया च समुल्लसिता महर्षिणा सुश्रुतेन विरचिता सुश्रुतसंहिता* (3rd edn., Bombay: Nirṇayasāgara Press), [ark : / 13960 / t09x0sk1h](#); HIML: IB, 313, edition cc ('the vulgate').
- Su 1938<sup>2</sup> Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikrama, and Ācārya, Nārāyaṇa Rāma (2004) (eds.), *महर्षिणा सुश्रुतेन विरचिता सुश्रुतसंहिता, श्रीडल्हणाचार्यविरचितया निबन्धसंग्रहाख्यव्याख्यया निदानस्थानस्य श्रीगयदासाचार्यविरचितया न्यायचन्द्रिकाख्यपञ्जिकाव्याख्यया च समुल्लसिता* (Vārāṇasī: Caukhambhā Kṛṣṇadāsa Akādamī); Reprint of the third, 1938 edition (Su 1938).
- Su 1939 Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikrama, and Śarman, Nandakiśora (1939) (eds.), *सुश्रुतसंहितायाः सूत्रस्थानम्. श्रीचक्रपाणिदत्तविरचितया भानुमतीव्याख्याया समेतम् = Sushrut-saṅhitā (sūtra Sthān) with Bhānumatī Commentary by Chakrapāṇi Datta with Introduction by Gaṇanāth Sen (Śrīsvāmi Lakṣmīrāma Nidhi Granthamālā = Shri Swāmī Lakshmi Rām Trust Series, 1; [Jaipur]: Śyāmasundara Śarman), ark : / 13960 / t54g0d12m*; Printed at the Nirṇayasāgara Press, Bombay.
- Su 1945 Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikramācārya, and Ācārya, Nārāyaṇa Rāma (1945) (eds.), *महर्षिणा सुश्रुतेन विरचिता सुश्रुतसंहिता (मूलमात्रा). पाठान्तर-परिशिष्टादिभिः संबलिता = the Suśrutasaṅhitā of Suśruta with Various Readings, Notes and Appendix etc.* (Mumbāi: Nirṇayasāgarākhyamudraṇālaye), [ark : / 13960 / t8kd4jh7n](#).
- TMSSML Tanjore Maharaja Serfoji Saraswati Mahal Library.
- Viṣṇudh. Śarman, Madhusūdana, and Śarman, Mādhavaprasāda (1912) (eds.), *विष्णुधर्मोत्तरपुराणम् = [Viṣṇudharmottarapurāṇa]* (Mumbai: Khemarāja Śrīkṛṣṇadāsa at the Śrīveṅkaṭeśvara Steam Press), [ark : / 13960 / t6qz6fr23](#); Lithograph format. Edited on the basis of a manuscript belonging to the astrologer Śudhākaraśarman of the Varanasi Sanskrit Pāṭhaśālā.



## **Index of Manuscripts**

*Numbers after the final colon refer to pages in this book.*

Bikaner RORI 5157: 90

Cambridge Add. 1693: 86

Hyderabad Osmania 137-3(b): 43

Kathmandu KL 699: 38, 44, 89, 145

Kathmandu NAK 1-1079: 11, 21, 39, 44

Kathmandu NAK 1-1146: 21

Kathmandu NAK 5-333: 11, 39, 44, 86, 91, 116

NAK 5-333: 104

Thanjavur TMSSML 10773: 165



# Bibliography

- Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikrama (1941) (ed.), *महर्षिणा पुनर्वसुनोपदिष्टा, तच्छिष्येणान्विशेषेण प्रणीता, चरकदृढबलाभ्यां प्रतिसंस्कृता चरकसंहिता, श्रीचक्रपाणिदत्तविरचितया आयुर्वेददीपिकाव्याख्यया संवलिता* (3rd edn., Mumbayyām: Nirnaya Sagara Press), [ark:/13960/t48q2f20n](https://nirnayapress.org/ark:/13960/t48q2f20n).
- Ācārya, Yādavaśarma Trivikramācārya, and Ācārya, Nārāyaṇa Rāma (1945) (eds.), *महर्षिणा सुश्रुतेन विरचिता सुश्रुतसंहिता (मूलमात्रा). पाठान्तर-परिशिष्टादिभिः संवलिता = the Suśrutasaṃhitā of Suśruta with Various Readings, Notes and Appendix etc.* (Mumbāi: Nirṇayasāgarākhyamudraṇālaye), [ark:/13960/t8kd4jh7n](https://nirnayapress.org/ark:/13960/t8kd4jh7n).
- Acharya, Diwakar (2012), “Description of Microfilm A 45/5,” NGMCP, [URL](https://ngmcp.org/), accessed 27/02/2023.
- Adriaensen, Rob, Barkhuis, Roelf, and Ruijters, Jean-Louis (1984), “An English Translation of Suśrutasaṃhitā, Nidānasthāna 1, 1–39, Together with Gayadāsa’s Nyāyacandrikā,” in Gerrit Jan Meulenbeld (ed.), *Proceedings of the International Workshop on Priorities in the Study of Indian Medicine* (Groningen: Forsten), 277–310. doi: [10.5281/zenodo.8201537](https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.8201537).
- Āgāśe, Ve. Śā. Rā. Rā. Kāśīnātha Śāstrī, and Āpāṭe, Hari Nārāyaṇa (1904) (eds.), *वाचस्पतिमिश्रविरचितटीकासंवलितव्यासभाष्यसमेतानि पातञ्जल-योगसूत्राणि तथा भोजदेवविरचिताजमार्तण्डाभिधवृत्तिसमेतानि पातञ्जलयोगसूत्राणि* (Ānandāśramasaṃskṛtagranthāvaliḥ, 47; Puṇyākhyā-pattana: Ānandāśramamudraṇālaya), [ark:/13960/t40s27g36](https://nirnayapress.org/ark:/13960/t40s27g36).
- Agrawal, V. S. (1963), *India As Known to Pāṇini: A Study of the Cultural Material in the Aṣṭādhyāyī* (2nd edn., Varanasi: Prthvi Prakashan); First published in 1953.



- Angermeier, Vitus (2020), *Regenzeiten, Feuchtgebiete, Körpersäfte. Das Wasser in der klassischen indischen Medizin* (Wien: Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften).
- (2021), “Agni and Soma Revisited: A Primordial Āyurvedic Concept?,” in Toke Lindegaard Knudsen, Jacob Schmidt-Madsen, and Sara Speyer (eds.), *Body and Cosmos* (Leiden: Brill), chap. 3, 15–32. doi: [10.1163/9789004438224\\_004](https://doi.org/10.1163/9789004438224_004).
- Azeez Pasha, M. (1971), “English Translation of Madan-ul-Shifa, Tibbe Sikandar Shahi (Sikandar Shah’s Mine of Medicine),” *Bulletin of the Department of History of Medicine (Osmania University, Hyderabad)*, 2/4: 227–2324; continued in BDHM 3(1) 29–38; BIHM 1(3/4) 127–134; & BIHM 2(1), 17–22.
- Baber, Zaheer (1996), *The Science of Empire: Scientific Knowledge, Civilization, and Colonial Rule in India* (Albany: State University of New York Press).
- Bakker, Hans T. (2019), “Some Methodological Considerations with Respect to the Critical Edition of Puranic Literature,” in *Holy Ground: Where Art and Text Meet* (Leiden: Brill), 175–84. doi: [10.1163/9789004412071\\_010](https://doi.org/10.1163/9789004412071_010).
- Barceloux, Donald G. (2008), *Medical Toxicology of Natural Substances. Foods, Fungi, Medicinal Herbs, Plants, and Venomous Animals* (Hoboken, NJ, etc.: John Wiley & Sons), ISBN: 047172761X.
- Bausi, Alessandro, et al. (2015), *Comparative Oriental Manuscript Studies. An Introduction* (Hamburg: Tredition). doi: [10.5281/ZENODO.46784](https://doi.org/10.5281/ZENODO.46784).
- Bedekar, V. M. (1967), “The Legend of the Churning of the Ocean in the Epics and the Purāṇas: A Comparative Study,” *Purāṇa*, 9/1: 7–61, [ark:/13960/t57d2r97r](https://doi.org/10.13960/t57d2r97r).
- Bendall, Cecil (1883), *Catalogue of the Buddhist Sanskrit, Manuscripts in The, University Library, Cambridge: With Introductory Notices and Illustrations of the Palaeography and Chronology of Nepal and Bengal* (Cambridge: University Press), [ark:/13960/t03x8vz7b](https://doi.org/10.13960/t03x8vz7b).
- Bhaṭṭācārya, Candrakānta (1910–17) (ed.), *सुश्रुतसंहिता प्रथमखण्डम् सूत्रस्थानात्मकम् हाराणचन्द्रचक्रवर्तिकविराजविरचितसुश्रुतार्थसन्दीपनभाष्य-समेतम्...चन्द्रकान्त भट्टाचार्य-प्रमुखैः संशोधितम्* = [The *Suśrutasaṃhitā* with the Commentary *Suśrutārthasandīpanabhāṣya* by Hārāṇacandra Cakravartī] (Kalikātā: Satya Press); Edition “t” in [HIML](https://www.himl.org/): IB, 312.

- Bhattacharai, Bidur (2020), *Dividing Texts. Conventions of Visual Text-Organisation in Nepalese and North Indian Manuscripts* (Studies in Manuscript Cultures; Berlin/Boston: de Gruyter), 388.
- Biardeau, Madeleine (1964), *Théorie de la connaissance et la philosophie de la parole dans la brahmanisme classique* (Paris & La Haye: Mouton & Co.), [ark:/13960/t42r7g950](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:bsz:55-13960-t42r7g950).
- Birch, Jason, Wujastyk, Dominik, Klebanov, Andrey, Parameswaran, Madhu K., et al. (2021), "Further Insight into the Role of Dhanvantari, the Physician to the Gods, in the Suśrutasaṃhitā," *Academia Letters*. doi: [10.20935/AL2992](https://doi.org/10.20935/AL2992).
- Birch, Jason, Wujastyk, Dominik, Klebanov, Andrey, Rimal, Madhusudan, et al. (2021), "Ḍalhaṇa and the Early 'Nepalese' Version of the Suśrutasaṃhitā." doi: [10.20935/al3733](https://doi.org/10.20935/al3733).
- Böhtlingk, Otto (1879), *Sanskrit-wörterbuch in kürzerer fassung* (St. Petersburg: Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften), [URL](#), accessed 18/05/2023.
- Böhtlingk, Otto, and Roth, Rudolph (1855–75), *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch* (St. Petersburg: Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften), [URL](#), accessed 18/05/2023.
- Bollée, Willem (2010), "Remarks on the Cultural History of the Ear in India," in Nalini Balbir (ed.), *Svasti: Essays in Honour of Professor Hampa Nagarajaiah for His 75th Birthday* (Bangalore: K. S. Mudappa Smaraka Trust), 141–67, [URL](#), accessed 23/01/2022.
- Breton, P. (1826), "On the Native Mode of Couching," *Transactions of the Medical and Physical Society of Calcutta*, 2: 341–82, [ark:/13960/t3dz8nn5t](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:bsz:55-13960-t3dz8nn5t), [URL](#), accessed 02/06/2021.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes (2016), *How the Brahmins Won: From Alexander to the Guptas* (Leiden: Brill). doi: [10.1163/97890004315518](https://doi.org/10.1163/97890004315518).
- (2021), "Patañjali's Āryāvarta = Śuṅga realm?," *Academia Letters*. doi: [10.20935/al291](https://doi.org/10.20935/al291); Article 291.
- Bronner, Yigal (2021) (ed.), "The Pandit Project" (30 Sept.), [URL](#).
- Brooks, Lisa Allette (2018), "Epistemology and Embodiment: Diagnosis and the Senses in Classical Ayurvedic Medicine," *Asian Review of World Histories*, 6: 98–135. doi: [10.1163/22879811-12340027](https://doi.org/10.1163/22879811-12340027).

- Brooks, Lisa Allette (2020a), "A Surgeon's Hand: Reflections on Surgical Tactility in Early Ayurveda," *Asian Medicine*, 15/1: 30–62. DOI: [10.1163/15734218-12341460](https://doi.org/10.1163/15734218-12341460).
- (2020b), "Whose Life is Water, Whose Food is Blood: Fluid Bodies in Āyurvedic Leech Therapy," in Natalie Köhle and Shigehisa Kuriyama (eds.), *Fluid Matter(s): Flow and Transformation in the History of the Body* (Asian Studies Monograph Series, 14; Canberra: ANU Press). DOI: [10.22459/fm.2020](https://doi.org/10.22459/fm.2020).
- (2021a), "The Vascularity of Ayurvedic Leech Therapy: Sensory Translations and Emergent Agencies in Interspecies Medicine," *Medical Anthropology Quarterly*, 35/1: 82–101. DOI: [10.1111/maq.12595](https://doi.org/10.1111/maq.12595).
- (2021b), "Translating Touch in Āyurveda: Medicine, Sense, and Subjectivity in Early south Asia and Contemporary Kerala," PhD thesis (University of California, Berkeley).
- (forthcoming), "Leech Logic," in An Editor (ed.), *A Book*.
- Burghart, Marjorie (2016), "The TEI Critical Apparatus Toolbox: Empowering Textual Scholars through Display, Control, and Comparison Features," *Journal of the Text Encoding Initiative*, 10/Issue 10. DOI: [10.4000/jtei.1520](https://doi.org/10.4000/jtei.1520).
- (2017), "Textual Variants," in Marjorie Burghart, James Cummings, and Elena Pierazzo (eds.), *Digital Editing of Medieval Texts: A Textbook* (DEMM), URL, accessed 04/07/2021.
- Burnell, Arthur Coke (1880), *A Classified Index to the Sanskrit Mss. in the Palace at Tanjore* (London: Trübner), [ark:/13960/t4xh86j61](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t4xh86j61); Bhelasamhitā described on pp. 67 ff.
- Carpue, J. C. (1816), *An Account of Two Successful Operations for Restoring a Lost Nose from the Integuments of the Forehead...Including Descriptions of the Indian and Italian Methods* (London: Longman et al.), [ark:/13960/t2q57fn42](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t2q57fn42), accessed 20/03/2019.
- Chadha, Gita, and Thomas, Renny (2022) (eds.), *Mapping Scientific Method: Disciplinary Narrations* (Science and Technology Studies; Abingdon and New York: Routledge). DOI: [10.4324/9781003298908](https://doi.org/10.4324/9781003298908).
- Cone, Margaret (2001), *A Dictionary of Pāli* (Oxford: The Pali Text Society), ISBN: 0 86013 394 x.

- Cordier, P. (1903), "Récentes découvertes de mss. médicaux sanscrits dans l'Inde (1898–1902)," *Muséon, Nouvelle Série*, 4: 321–52, [ark : / 13960 / t26b2j457](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:fr:shs-0001-13960-t26b2j457), accessed 02/01/2020; Reprinted in Roşu 1989: 539–70.
- Coult, Ro. (1731), "An Account of the Diseases of Bengall," in *Indian Science and Technology in the Eighteenth Century* (Impex India), 141 f., 276.
- Crawford, D. G. (1930), *Roll of the Indian Medical Service, 1615–1930* (London, Calcutta, Simla: Thacker).
- Das, Rahul Peter (2003), *The Origin of the Life of a Human Being. Conception and the Female According to Ancient Indian Medical and Sexological Literature* (Indian Medical Tradition; Delhi: Motilal Banarsidas), ISBN: 81-208-1998-5.
- Dasgupta, S. N. (1952), "Speculations in the Medical Schools," in *A History of Indian Philosophy*, ii (Reprint of 1932 edition, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press), chap. 13, 273–436, [URL](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:fr:shs-0001-13960-t2c94cv80), accessed 26/01/2018.
- Dave, K. N. (1985), *Birds in Sanskrit Literature* (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass), ISBN: 0-89581-676-8, [ark: / 13960 / t2c94cv80](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:fr:shs-0001-13960-t2c94cv80).
- Deshpande, Madhav (1988), "Pāṇini and the Northwestern Dialect: Some Suggestions on Sūtra 3.3.10," in Mohammad Ali Jazayery and Werner Winter (eds.), *Languages and Cultures: Studies in Honor of Edgar C. Polomé*, xxxvi (Trends in linguistics. Studies and monographs; Berlin, New York: Mouton de Gruyter), 111–23.
- Deshpande, Madhav M. (2010), "Pañca Gauḍa and Pañca Drāviḍa: Contested Borders of a Traditional Classification," in Klaus Karttunen (ed.), *Anantaṃ Śāstram. Indological and Linguistic Studies in Honour of Bertil Tikkannen* (Studia Orientalia, 108; Helsinki: Finnish Oriental Society), 29–58, ISBN: 9789519380742.
- Deshpande, Vijaya (1999), "Indian Influences on Early Chinese Ophthalmology: Glaucoma As a Case Study," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, 62: 306–22. DOI: [10.1017/S0041977X00016724](https://doi.org/10.1017/S0041977X00016724).
- (2000), "Ophthalmic Surgery: A Chapter in the History of Sino-indian Medical Contacts," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, 63/3: 370–88, ISSN: 0041-977X. DOI: [10.1017/s0041977x00008454](https://doi.org/10.1017/s0041977x00008454).
- Deshpande, Vijaya Jayant (2019), "An Investigation into Ancient Greco-Indian Medical Exchanges: Sostratus vs Suśruta," *Indian Journal of History of Science*, 54/2: 144–61. DOI: [10.16943/ijhs/2019/v54i2/49659](https://doi.org/10.16943/ijhs/2019/v54i2/49659).

- Dimitrov, Dragomir, and Tamot, Kashinath (2007), "Kaiser Shamsher, His Library and His Manuscript Collection," *Kaiser Shamsher, His Library and His Manuscript Collection*, 3 (Jan.): 26–36, [URL](#).
- Dixit, U., and Deole, Y. S. (2020), "Tantrayukti," in Basisht G. (ed.), *Charak Samhita New Edition* (Charak Samhita Research, Training and Skill Development Centre (CSRTSDC)), 151–1. DOI: [10.47468/csne.2020.e01.s09.022](#).
- Doniger, Wendy (2015), "Introduction: Sympathy for the Devi: Snakes and Snake Goddesses in Hinduism," in Kaiser Haq, *The Triumph of the Snake Goddess* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press), 1–28. DOI: [10.4159/9780674089136-intro](#).
- Eaton, Richard M. (1993), *The Rise of Islam and the Bengal Frontier, 1204–1760* (Berkeley: University of California Press), [ark:/13030/ft067n99v9/](#).
- Edgerton, Franklin (1939), "The Epic Triṣṭubh and Its Hypermetric Varieties," *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 59/2: 159–74. DOI: [10.2307/594060](#).
- (1953), *Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Grammar and Dictionary*. Vol. 2: *Dictionary* (William Dwight Whitney Linguistic Series; New Haven: Yale University Press).
- Eggeling, Julius, et al. (1887–1935), *Catalogue of the Sanskrit Manuscripts in the Library of the India Office* (London: Secretary of State for India), [ark:/13960/s2kbb5zcrg9](#).
- Elliot, Robert Henry (1918), *The Indian Operation of Couching for Cataract: Incorporating the Hunterian Lectures Delivered before the Royal College of Surgeons of England on February 19 and 21, 1917* (London: H. K. Lewis).
- Elshakry, Marwa S. (2008), "Knowledge in Motion: The Cultural Politics of Modern Science Translations in Arabic," *Isis*, 99/4: 701–30. DOI: [10.1086/595767](#), [URL](#), accessed 24/02/2019.
- Emeneau, M. B. (1969), "Sanskrit Syntactic Particles – "kila, khalu, nūnam"," *Indo-Iranian Journal*, 11/4: 241–68.
- Ewart, Joseph (1878), *The Poisonous Snakes of India: For the Use of the Officials and Others Residing in the Indian Empire* (London: J & A Churchill), ISBN: 81-7002-011-5, [ark:/13960/t9z07w72g](#); Reprinted Delhi: Himalayan Books, 1985.

- Falk, Harry (1991), "Silver, Lead and Zinc in Early Indian Literature," *South Asian Studies*, 7/1: 111–7. DOI: [10.1080/02666030.1991.9628430](https://doi.org/10.1080/02666030.1991.9628430).
- Fan, Ka Wai (2005), "Couching for Cataract and Sino-Indian Medical Exchange From the Sixth to the Twelfth Century AD," *Clinical and Experimental Ophthalmology*, 33/2: 188–90. DOI: [10.1111/j.1442-9071.2005.00978.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1442-9071.2005.00978.x); unaware of V. Deshpande 1999; 2000.
- Fayrer, Joseph (1874), *The Thanatophidia of India, Being a Description of the Venomous Snakes of the Indian Peninsula with and Account of the Influence of their Poison on Life and a Series of Experiments* (2nd edn., London: Churchill), [ark:/13960/t9h49dg5c](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:uk:2019-06-13960-t9h49dg5c); First edition 1872.
- Fitzgerald, James L. (2009), "A Preliminary Study of the 681 Triṣṭubh Passages of the Mahābhārata," in Robert P. Goldman and Muneo Tokunaga (eds.), *Epic Undertakings* (Papers of the 12th World Sanskrit Conference; Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass Publishe), 95–117.
- Flood, Gavin D. (2022) (ed.), *Wiley Blackwell Companion to Hinduism* (2nd edn., Hoboken, NJ: Wiley & Sons, Limited), ISBN: 9781119144861.
- Froese, R., and Pauly, D. (2022) (eds.), "Fishbase: The Global Encyclopedia about Fish," [URL](https://www.fishbase.org/).
- Gaṇapatiśāstrī, T. (1920–25), *Āryamañjuśrīmūlakalpaḥ* (Trivandrum Sanskrit Series, 70; Anantaśayane: Rājakīyamudraṇayanāntrālaye), [ark:/13960/t4pk5sj0j](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:uk:2019-06-13960-t4pk5sj0j).
- Giesche, Alena, et al. (2023), "Recurring Summer and Winter Droughts from 4.2–3.97 Thousand Years Ago in North India," *Nature: Communications Earth & Environment*, 4/1: 1–10. DOI: [10.1038/s43247-023-00763-z](https://doi.org/10.1038/s43247-023-00763-z).
- Gode, P. K., and Karve, C. G. (1957–59) (eds.), *Revised and Enlarged Edition of Prin. V. S. Apte's the Practical Sanskrit-English Dictionary* (Poona: Prasad Prakashan), [ark:/13960/t3gx47212](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:uk:2019-06-13960-t3gx47212), accessed 20/10/2017.
- Gombrich, Richard (1979), "'He Cooks Softly': Adverbs in Sanskrit Grammar," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, 42/2: 244–56. DOI: [10.1017/s0041977x0014580x](https://doi.org/10.1017/s0041977x0014580x).
- Goswami, Pradip Kumar (2011), "Comparative Studies of Bhanumati and Nibandha Samgraha with Special Reference to Arista Vijnana (prognostic Science)," *AYU (An International Quarterly Journal of Research in Ayurveda)*, 32/2: 147. DOI: [10.4103/0974-8520.92540](https://doi.org/10.4103/0974-8520.92540).



- Gupta, Parmanand (1973), *Geography In Ancient Indian Scriptures* (Up to 650 A.D.) (Delhi: D. K. Publishing House), [ark:/13960/t3907cf2d](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t3907cf2d).
- (1989), *Geography from Ancient Indian Coins & Seals* (New Delhi: Concept Publishing Company), ISBN: 9788170222484.
- Gupta, Sri Madhusudana (1835–36) (ed.), *Āyur-veda-prakāśa [also Called Suśruta-saṃhitā] by Suśruta. the Suśruta, or System of Medicine, Taught by Dhanwantari, and Composed by His Disciple Suśruta*, 2 vols. (Calcutta: Education Press and Baptist Mission Press), [ark:/13960/t6841qw6x](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t6841qw6x).
- Haas, E. (1876), “Über die Ursprünge der Indischen Medizin, mit besonderem Bezug auf Suśruta,” *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, 30/4: 617–70, [URL](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t6841qw6x).
- Harimoto, Kengo (2010), “[Preliminary Edition of the Nepalese MSS of the Suśrutasamhitā, adhyāyas 1.1–3, 6.4]” (prepublished).
- (2011), “In Search of the Oldest Nepalese Manuscript,” *Rivista degli Studi Orientali*, 84/1–4: 85–106, ISSN: 0392-4866, [URL](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t6841qw6x), accessed 08/09/2019.
- (2013), “Description of microfilm C 80/7,” NGMCP, [URL](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t6841qw6x), accessed 27/02/2023.
- (2014), “Nepalese Manuscripts of the Suśrutasamhitā,” *Journal of Indian and Buddhist Studies* (Indogaku Bukkyogaku Kenkyu), 62/3: 23–29 (1087–1093). DOI: [10.4259/ibk.62.3\\_1087](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t6841qw6x), [URL](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t6841qw6x), accessed 08/09/2019.
- Hayashi, Takao (2017), “The Units of Time in Ancient and Medieval India,” *History of Science in South Asia*, 5/1: 1–116. DOI: [10.18732/h2ht0h](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t6841qw6x).
- Hemarāja Śarman (1938) (ed.), काश्यपसंहिता (वृद्धजीवकीयं तन्त्रं वा) महर्षिणा मारीचकश्यपेनोपदिष्टा ... हेमराजशर्मणा लिखितेन विस्तृतेन उपोद्धातेन सहिता ... सत्यपाल भिषगा कृतया विद्योतिनी हिन्दीव्याख्यया ... समुल्लसिता (1st edn., Mumba: Nirṇayasāgara Press), [ark:/13960/t3mw5gb9p](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t3mw5gb9p).
- Hendley, T. Holbein (1895), *A Medico-topographical Account of Jeypore, Based on the Experience of Twenty Years’ Service As a Residency Surgeon and Thirteen As Superintendent of Dispensaries at Jeypore, Rajputana* (Calcutta: Calcutta Central Press Company).

- Hessler, Franciscus (1844–55), *Suśrutas Ayurvédas: id est Medicinae Systema a Venerabili D'hanvantare Demonstratum a Susruta Discipulo Compositum; Nunc Primum Ex Sanskrita in Latinum Sermonem Vertit, Introductionem, Annotationes Et Rerum Indice Franciscus Hessler* (Erlangen: Ferdinandum Enke), [ark:/13960/t17m45r97](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-63862-p0097-9).
- Hoernle, A. F. Rudolf (1893–1912) (ed.), *The Bower Manuscript: Facsimile Leaves, Nagari Transcript, Romanised Transliteration and English Translation with Notes* (New Imperial Series, 22; Calcutta: Government of India and under the patronage of the Bengali Government, Archaeological Survey of India), [ark:/13960/t05z1bg4q](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-63862-p0097-9).
- (1897), *सुश्रुतसंहिता = The Suśruta-Saṃhitā or the Hindū System of Medicine According to Suśruta Translated from the Original Sanskrit* (Bibliotheca Indica, 911; Calcutta: Asiatic Society), [ark:/13960/t8pd1kw9r](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-63862-p0097-9), accessed 03/01/2018; No more published; Hoernle does not state which edition he is translating, but it includes the “Dhanvantari phrase”.
- (1906a), “Studies in Ancient Indian Medicine I: The Commentaries on Suśruta,” *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland*: 283–302, [URL](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-63862-p0097-9), accessed 26/06/2019.
- (1906b), “Studies in Ancient Indian Medicine II: On Some Obscure Anatomical Terms,” *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland*, 4: 915–41, [URL](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-63862-p0097-9), accessed 25/06/2019.
- (1907a), “Studies in Ancient Indian Medicine II: On Some Obscure Anatomical Terms (Continued from the the Journal, 1906, p. 941),” *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland*: 1–18, [URL](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-63862-p0097-9), accessed 25/06/2019.
- (1907b), *Studies in the Medicine of Ancient India: Osteology or the Bones of the Human Body* (Oxford: Clarendon Press), [ark:/13960/t1pg9cq8b](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-63862-p0097-9).
- Hofer, Theresia (2007), “Swami Laxmi Ram’s Ayurvedic Pharmacy in Jaipur, India,” *Wellcome History*, 34: 2–3, [URL](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-63862-p0097-9), accessed 16/03/2022.
- Holwell, J. Z. (1767), *An Account of the Manner of Inoculating for the Small Pox in the East Indies With...Observations on The...Mode of Treating That Disease in Those Parts* (London: T. Becket & P. A. de Hondt), [ark:/13960/t3ws9h63c](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-63862-p0097-9).



- Jack, David Morton (1884), "A Thesis on Cataract in India: Its Pathology and Treatment," Wellcome Library, London, MS 3007, [URL](#), accessed 02/06/2021.
- Jamison, Stephanie W., and Brereton, Joel P. (2014), *The Rigveda* (South Asia Research; New York: Oxford University Press), ISBN: 9780199370184; With commentary at <http://rigvedacommentary.alc.ucla.edu/>.
- Jhalakīkar, Bhīmācārya (1978), *न्यायकोशः (सकलशास्त्रोपकारकन्यायादिशास्त्रीयपदार्थप्रकाशकः)* = *Nyāyakośa or Dictionary of Technical Terms of Indian Philosophy* (Poona: Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute), [ark : /13960 / t4cp7242f](https://nirx.iiit.ac.in/ark:/13960/t4cp7242f).
- Kangle, R. P. (1969), *The Kauṭilīya Arthaśāstra* (2nd edn., Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass), ISBN: 81-208-0042-7, [ark : /13960 / t3gz6qh1s](https://nirx.iiit.ac.in/ark:/13960/t3gz6qh1s), accessed 23/09/2021.
- Karttunen, Klaus (2015), *Yonas and Yavanas in Indian Literature* (Studia Orientalia, 116; Helsinki: Finnish Oriental Society), 454, ISBN: 978-951-9380-88-9, [URL](#); Published electronically in 2016 as a back issue of *Studia Orientalia*.
- Keith, Arthur Berriedale (1908), review of A. F. Rudolf Hoernle (1907), "Studies in Ancient Indian Medicine II: On Some Obscure Anatomical Terms (Continued from the the Journal, 1906, p. 941)," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland*: 1–18, [URL](#), accessed 25/06/2019, in *Zeitschrift Der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, 1/62: 134–9, [URL](#), accessed 17/04/2021.
- Kieffer-Pülz, Petra (1996), "The Meaning of Māḷa(ka) / māla(ka) in Pāli," in N. Balbir, G.-J. Pinault, and J. Fezas (eds.), *Langue, style et structure dans le monde indien, Centenaire de Louis Renou. Actes du Colloque international* (Paris, 25–27 janvier 1996 (Paris), 285–325, [URL](#), accessed 17/05/2023.
- Klebanov, Andrey (2010), "The \*Nepalese Version of the Suśrutasaṃhitā and Its Interrelation with Buddhism and the Buddhists," MA thesis (Hamburg: Hamburg University, Sept.), [URL](#), accessed 08/09/2019.
- (2012), "Description of microfilm B 29/19," NGMCP, [URL](#), accessed 27/02/2023.

- (2021a), “On the Textual History of the Suśrutasaṃhitā (1): A Study of Three Nepalese Manuscripts,” *eJIM: Electronic Journal of Indian Medicine*, 12/1: 1–64. DOI: [10.21827/ejim.12.1.37385](https://doi.org/10.21827/ejim.12.1.37385).
- (2021b), “On the Textual History of the Suśrutasaṃhitā, (2): An Anonymous Commentary and its Identified Citations,” in Toke Lindegaard Knudsen, Jacob Schmidt-Madsen, and Sara Speyer (eds.), *Body and Cosmos: Studies in Early Indian Medical and Astral Sciences in Honor of Kenneth G. Zysk* (Leiden, Boston: Brill), 110–39. DOI: [10.1163/9789004438224\\_008](https://doi.org/10.1163/9789004438224_008).
- Kuist, James M. (1982), *The Nichols File of The Gentleman's Magazine* (Madison: University of Wisconsin Press), ISBN: 0-299-08480-9, [ark:/13960/t53g2ct2z](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-39660-p0022-7).
- Kulikov, Leonid (2006), “The Sanskrit -yet- Optative: A Formation Not Yet Recorded in Sanskrit Grammars,” *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde Südasiens*, 50: 27–68. DOI: [10.1553/wzksls27](https://doi.org/10.1553/wzksls27), URL.
- Lariviere, Richard W. (2003), *The Nāradaśmr̥ti. Critically Edited with an Introduction, annotated Translation, and Appendices* (2nd edn., Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass), ISBN: 8120818040; First edition: Philadelphia, 1989.
- Law, Bimala Churn (1984), *Historical Geography of Ancient India* (New Delhi: Orient Books Reprint), [ark:/13960/t3d01t737](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-39660-p0022-7); Reprint of 1954 Paris edition.
- Leffler, Christopher T., et al. (2020), “The History of Cataract Surgery: From Couching to Phacoemulsification,” *Annals of Translational Medicine*, 8/22: 1551–97, ISSN: 2305-5847. DOI: [10.21037/atm-2019-rs-04](https://doi.org/10.21037/atm-2019-rs-04), URL, accessed 02/11/2020.
- Lele, W. K. (1981), *The Doctrine of the Tantrayukti-s: Methodology of Theoretico-scientific Treatises in Sanskrit* (Chaukhamba Surabharati Studies, 3; Varanasi: Chaukhamba Surabharati Prakashan), [ark:/13960/s28vqzhkdjq](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-39660-p0022-7).
- Li, Charles (2017), “Critical Diplomatic Editing: Applying Text-critical Principles As Algorithms,” in Peter Boot et al. (eds.), *Advances in Digital Scholarly Editing. Papers Presented at the Dixit Conferences in the Hague, Cologne, and Antwerp* (Leiden: Sidestone Press), 305–10, ISBN: 978-90-8890-485-1, URL, accessed 10/11/2020.
- (2017–), “Saktumiva,” URL, accessed 21/01/2023.

- Li, Charles (2018), "Limits of the Real: A Hypertext Critical Edition of Bhartṛhari's *Dravyasamuddeśa*, with the Commentary of Helārāja," en, PhD thesis (Cambridge: University of Cambridge). DOI: [10.17863/CAM.31454](https://doi.org/10.17863/CAM.31454).
- (2022a), "Helayo: Reconstructing Sanskrit Texts from Manuscript Witnesses," *Journal of Open Source Software*, 7/71: 4022. DOI: [10.21105/joss.04022](https://doi.org/10.21105/joss.04022).
- (2022b), "Reconstructing a Sanskrit Text" (19 Nov.), [URL](#), accessed 20/01/2023.
- Lienhard, Siegfried (1978), "On the Meaning and Use of the Word *Indragopa*," *Indologica taurinensia*, 6: 177–88, [URL](#), accessed 06/02/2021; The *indragopa* is a 'red velvet mite'.
- Longmate, Barak (1794), "A Curious Chirurgical Operation," *The Gentleman's Magazine and Historical Chronicle*, 64.4 (Oct.): 883, 891, 892; I am grateful to the late John Symons of the Wellcome Library who identified the author 'B. L.' as the journalist Barak Longmate. See also Kuist [1982](#): 87.
- Maas, Philipp André (2013), "A Concise Historiography of Classical Yoga Philosophy: leslie," in Eli Franco (ed.), *Historiography and Periodization of Indian Philosophy* (Vienna: Sammlung de Nobili), 53–90, [URL](#), accessed 27/05/2016.
- Mairs, Rachel (2013), "Greek Settler Communities in Central and South Asia, 323 BCE to 10 CE," in Ato Quayson (ed.), *A Companion To Diaspora And Transnationalism* (Oxford: John Wiley and Sons Ltd), 443–54, ISBN: 9781405188265.
- (2014), *The Hellenistic Far East: Archaeology, Language, and Identity in Greek Central Asia: Archaeology, Language, and Identity in Greek Central Asia* (Berkeley: University of California Press), 250, ISBN: 9780520292468. DOI: [10.1525/9780520959545](https://doi.org/10.1525/9780520959545).
- Majno, Guido (1975), *The Healing Hand. Man and Wound in the Ancient World* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press), [ark:/13960/t4hm7xf2c](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t4hm7xf2c).
- Malamoud, Charles (1996), "Paths of the Knife: Carving up the Victim in Vedic Sacrifice," in *Cooking the World: Ritual and Thought in Ancient India. Translated from the French by David White* (Delhi, Bombay, etc.: Oxford University Press), 169–80.

- Mānasa-taraṅgiṇī (2019), “Kaiṭabha, Poison and Death: Meanderings through Tradition,” mAnasa-taraMgiNI Blog (1 Sept.), [URL](#), accessed 31/01/2023.
- Manevskaia, Ilona (2008), “Preliminary Observations on Compositional Methods in Haribhadra’s Ālokā,” in Richard Gombrich and Cristina Scherrer-Schaub (eds.), *Buddhist Studies* (Papers of the 12th World Sanskrit Conference, 8; Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass), 97–117.
- Manucci, Niccolò (1907–08), *Storia Do Mogor or, Mogul India, 1653–1708 by Niccolao Manucci, Venetian; Translated with Introduction and Notes, by William Irvine* (The Indian Texts Series; London: J. Murray), [URL](#), accessed 04/10/2021.
- Masai, François (1950), “Principes et conventions de l’édition diplomatique,” *Scriptorium*, 4: 177–93. DOI: [10.3406/scrip.1950.2294](#).
- McHugh, James (2021), *An Unholy Brew: Alcohol in Indian History and Religions* (New York: Oxford University Press), 416 pp., ISBN: 9780199375936.
- Mehta, S. R., and Sashindran, V. K. (2002), “Clinical Features And Management Of Snake Bite,” *Medical Journal Armed Forces India*, 58/3 (July): 247–9. DOI: [10.1016/s0377-1237\(02\)80140-x](#).
- Mejor, Marek (2000), “Some Observations on the Date of the *Yukti-dīpikā* (apropos of a New Edition),” in Piotr Błecrowicz and Marek Mejor (eds.), *On the Understanding of Other Cultures*, vii (Studia Indologiczne; Warszawa: Instytut Orientalistyczny, Uniwersytet Warszawski), 255–89.
- Meulenbeld, Gerrit Jan (1974b), *The Mādhavanidāna and Its Chief Commentary: Chapters 1–10. Introduction, Translation, and Notes* (Leiden: Brill), ISBN: 978-90-04-03892-9, [ark:/13960/t25b8q97g](#).
- (1984), “The Surveying of Sanskrit Medical Literature,” in id. (ed.), *Proceedings of the International Workshop on Priorities in the Study of Indian Medicine* (Groningen: Forsten), 37–56.
- (1989), “The Search for Clues to the Chronology of Sanskrit Medical Texts As Illustrated by the History of Bhaṅgā (cannabis Sativa Linn.),” *Studien zur Indologie und Iranistik*, 15: 59–70.

- Meulenbeld, Gerrit Jan (1990), "Conformities and Divergences of Basic Ayurvedic Concepts in Veterinary Texts," *Journal of the European Ayurvedic Society*, 1: 1–6, [URL](#), accessed 16/02/2022.
- (1991), "The Constraints of Theory in the Evolution of Nosological Classifications: A Study on the Position of Blood in Indian Medicine (Āyurveda)," in *Medical Literature from India, Sri Lanka, and Tibet*, 91–106, ISBN: 90-04-09522-5, [URL](#).
- (1992), "The Characteristics of a Doṣa," *Journal of the European Āyurvedic Society*, 2/1: 1–5, [ark:/13960/t8hf69z8j](#).
- (2008), *The Mādhavanidāna with "Madhukośa," the Commentary by Vijayarakṣita and Śrīkaṇṭhadatta (Ch. 1-10). Introduction, Translation, and Notes* (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass).
- (2011), "The Relationships between Doṣas and Dūṣyas: A Study on the Meaning(s) of the Root Murch-/murch," *eJournal of Indian Medicine*, 4/2: 35–135, [URL](#), accessed 13/10/2017.
- Miles, M. (1999), "Personal Communication," Mar.; Letter of 4 March.
- Moureau, Sébastien. (2015), "The Apparatus Criticus," in Alessandro Bausi et al. (eds.), *Comparative Oriental Manuscript Studies: An Introduction* (Hamburg: Tredition), 348–52, ISBN: 978-3-7323-1768-4, [URL](#), accessed 04/07/2021.
- Mukhopādhyāya, Girindranāth (1913), *The Surgical Instruments of the Hindus, with a Comparative Study of the Surgical Instruments of the Greek, Roman, Arab, and the Modern European (sic) Surgeons* (Calcutta: Calcutta University), [ark:13960/t1zd2pq29](#), accessed 29/01/2018; Vol.2: [ark:/13960/t9r25qd8m](#). Reprinted as a single volume, New Delhi, 1987.
- Muthuswami, Nurani Easwara (1976) (ed.), *Tantrayuktivicāraḥ [by Nīlameghabhiṣaj]* (Kerala Praśāsanāyurveda Granthāvaliḥ, 1; 2nd edn., Trivandrum: Publications Division, Govt. Ayurveda College), [URL](#), accessed 09/03/2018; Etext transcribed from edition by Manoj Sankaranarayana and Pavana J.
- Narayana, Ala, and Thrigulla, Saketh Ram (2011), "Tangible Evidences of Surgical Practice in Ancient India," *Journal of Indian Medical Heritage*, 16: 1–18, [URL](#), accessed 02/06/2021.

- Nārāyaṇa, Śaṃkaraśarman (1949), *Tantrayuktiḥ*, ed. Vayaskara N. S. Mooss (Vaidyasārathigranthāvaliḥ, 6; Kottayanagaryāṃ: Vaidyasārathi Press), [URL](#), accessed 09/03/2018.
- NGMCP (2014), “Nepal-german Manuscript Cataloguing Project. Online Title List and Descriptive Catalogue,” Universität Hamburg and Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft, [URL](#).
- Oberhammer, Gerhard (1967–68), “Notes on the Tantrayukti-s,” *The Adyar Library Bulletin*, 31–2: 600–16, [URL](#).
- Oberlies, Thomas (2003), *A Grammar of Epic Sanskrit* (Indian Philology and South Asian Studies, 5; Berlin: De Gruyter), ISBN: 9783110144482. DOI: [10.1515/9783110899344](#).
- Olivelle, Patrick (2001), *Food for Thought. Dietary Rules and Social Organization in Ancient India* (Gonda Lectures, 9; Amsterdam: Royal Netherlands Academy of Arts and Sciences), [URL](#), accessed 28/06/2023.
- (2005), *Manu’s Code of Law: A Critical Edition and Translation of the Manava-dharmasastra*, With the editorial assistance of Suman Olivelle (South Asia research; New York: Oxford University Press), ISBN: 0195171462.
- (2013), *King, Governance, and Law in Ancient India: Kauṭilya’s Arthaśāstra. a New Annotated Translation* (New York: Oxford University Press), ISBN: 9780199891825. DOI: [10.1093/acprof:osobl/9780199891825.003.0001](#).
- Osbaldeston, Tess Anne, and Wood, R. P. A. (2000), *Dioscorides. De Materia Medica. Being an Herbal with Many Other Medicinal Materials Written in Greek in the First Century of the Common Era. a New Indexed Version in Modern English* [Introductory Notes by R. P. Wood] (Johannesburg: IBIDIS Press), ISBN: 0-620-23435-0, [URL](#).
- Pandey, Anshuman (2012), “Proposal to Encode the Newar Script in ISO/IEC 10646,” [URL](#).
- Pāṇḍeya, Rāmateja (1963) (ed.), *श्रीकृष्णद्वैपायनव्यासप्रणीतं गरुडपुराणम्* (Vidyabhawan Prachyavidya Granthamala, 3; reprint, Caukhambā Vidyābhavana, Paṇḍita-Pustakālaya: Kāśī), [ark:/13960/t6pz7tg7j](#).
- Pass, Gregory (2003), *Descriptive Cataloging of Ancient, Medieval, Renaissance, and Early Modern Manuscripts* (Chicago: American Library Association), ISBN: 0-8389-8218-2, [URL](#).



- PBS (2020), "Modern Day Blood-letting in North Africa," PBS (11 Dec.), [URL](#); Filmed in Farchana, Chad, amongst Sudanese refugees from Darfur, for the series *Our Human Planet*.
- Pillay, V. V. (2013), *Modern Medical Toxicology* (New Delhi: Jaypee Brothers Pvt. Ltd), ISBN: 9789350259658.
- Pillay, Vijay V., and Sasidharan, Anu (2019), "Oleander and Datura Poisoning: An Update," *Indian Journal of Critical Care Medicine*, 23/Supplement 4: 5250–5. DOI: [10.5005/jp-journals-10071-23302](#).
- Preisendanz, Karin (2007), "The Initiation of the Medical Student in Early Classical Āyurveda: Caraka's Treatment in Context," in Birgit Kellner et al. (eds.), *Pramāṇakīrtiḥ. Papers Dedicated to Ernst Steinkellner on the Occasion of His 70th Birthday. Part 2*, ii, 2 vols. (Wiener Studien zur Tibetologie und Buddhismuskunde, 70.2; Wien: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische Und Buddhistische Studien Universität Wien), 629–68, ISBN: 9783902501097, [URL](#).
- (2013), "Logic, Debate and Epistemology in Ancient Indian Medical Science: An Investigation Into the History and Historiography of Indian Philosophy. Part I," in Dominik Wujastyk, Anthony Cerulli, and Karin Preisendanz (eds.), *Medical Texts and Manuscripts in Indian Cultural History* (Delhi: Manohar Publishers and Distributors), 63–139, ISBN: 978-9350980194.
- Prets, Ernst, and Prandstetter, Joachim (1991–2006), *Terminologie der frühen philosophischen Scholastik in Indien: Ein Begriffswörterbuch zur altindischen Dialektik, Erkenntnislehre und Methodologie*, ed. Gerhard Oberhammer (Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, Philosophisch-Historische Klasse, Denkschriften, 223, 248, 343; Wien: Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften); Beiträge zur Kultur- und Geistesgeschichte Asiens; Nr. 9, 17, 49.
- Price, Kenneth M. (2013), "Electronic Scholarly Editions," in Ray Siemens and Susan Schreibman (eds.), *A Companion to Digital Literary Studies* (Chichester, UK: John Wiley & Sons, Ltd), 434–50. DOI: [10.1002/9781405177504.ch24](#), [URL](#), accessed 04/07/2021.
- Rādhākāntā Deva, Rājā (1876), *शब्दकल्पद्रुमः = Shabda Kalpadrumah, Or, the Tree Bearing All the Words That May Be Wished For* (Calcutta: Baradākānta Mitra & Co. at the New Bengal Press), [ark:/13960/t9x10x61b](#).

- Rai, Saurav Kumar (2019), "Invoking 'Hindu' Ayurveda: Communalisation of the Late Colonial Ayurvedic Discourse," *The Indian Economic & Social History Review*, 56/4: 411–26. DOI: [10.1177/0019464619873820](https://doi.org/10.1177/0019464619873820); Online first.
- Rama Rao, B., et al. (2005), *Sanskrit Medical Manuscripts in India* (New Delhi: Central Council for Research in Ayurveda & Siddha), [ark:/13960/t88h7763b](https://nopr.scribd.com/document/13960/t88h7763b).
- Rama Sastri and Krishnamurthi Sastri, S. R. (1952) (eds.), *पातञ्जलयोगसूत्रभाष्यविवरणम् । (शङ्करभगवत्पादप्रणीतम्) = Pātñjala[sic]-yogasūtra-bhāṣya Vivaraṇam of Śaṅkara-Bhagavatpāda. Critically Edited with Introduction* (Madras Government Oriental Series, 94; Madras: Government Oriental Manuscripts Library), [ark:/13960/t7jq3m14w](https://nopr.scribd.com/document/13960/t7jq3m14w), accessed 20/10/2017.
- Rây, Priyadarajan, Gupta, Hirendra Nath, and Roy, Mira (1980), *Suśruta Saṁhita (a Scientific Synopsis)* (New Delhi: Indian National Science Academy), [ark:/13960/t64511t6v](https://nopr.scribd.com/document/13960/t64511t6v), accessed 13/09/2019.
- Raychaudhuri, Hemachandra (1953), *Political History of Ancient India* (Calcutta: University of Calcutta), [ark:/13960/s25hz0hz29p](https://nopr.scribd.com/document/13960/s25hz0hz29p).
- Renou, Louis (1940), "Sur certaines anomalies de l'optatif Sanskrit," *Bulletin de la Société de Linguistique de Paris*, 41: 5–17, [ark:/12148/bpt6k121049](https://nopr.scribd.com/document/12148/bpt6k121049).
- Rhys Davids, Thomas William, and Stede, William (1921–25), *The Pali Text Society's Pali-English Dictionary* (London: The Pali Text Society), [ark:/13960/t4nk3nc12](https://nopr.scribd.com/document/13960/t4nk3nc12).
- Rimal, Madhusudana, and Wujastyk, Dominik (2022), "MS Kathmandu NAK 1/1146," Pandit Project (18 May), [URL](https://panditproject.org/MS-Kathmandu-NAK-1-1146).
- Roelli, Philipp (2020) (ed.), *Handbook of Stemmataology* (Berlin: De Gruyter). DOI: [10.1515/9783110684384](https://doi.org/10.1515/9783110684384).
- Roelli, Philipp, and Macé, Caroline (2015), "Parvum Lexicon Stemmataologicum. A Brief Lexicon of Stemmataology." DOI: [10.5167/uzh-121539](https://doi.org/10.5167/uzh-121539).
- Roşu, Arion (1989), *Un demi-siècle de recherches āyurvédiques. Gustave Liétard et Palmyr Cordier: Travaux sur l'histoire de la médecine indienne* (Paris: Institut de Civilisation Indienne).



- Ruben, Walter (1926), "Zur Frühgeschichte der indischen Philosophie," in W. Kirfel (ed.), *Beiträge zur Literaturwissenschaft und Geistesgeschichte Indiens – Festgabe Hermann Jacobi zum 75. Geburtstag <11. Februar 1925> dargebracht von Freunden, Kollegen und Schülern* (Bonn: Kommissionsverlag Fritz Klopp), 346–57.
- (1954a), *Geschichte der indischen Philosophie [collected articles]* (Berlin: Deutscher Verlag), [ark:/13960/t9v18cc78](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t9v18cc78).
- (1954b), "Medizin (Caraka) und Logik (Nyāya) (um 100 u. Z.)," in id., *Geschichte der indischen Philosophie [collected articles]* (Berlin: Deutscher Verlag), chap. 21, 212–22, [ark:/13960/t9v18cc78](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t9v18cc78).
- Saha, Mridula (2015), *The History of Indian Medicine Based on the Vedic Literature Satapatha Brahmana* (Kolkata: The Asiatic Society), ISBN: 978-9381574294.
- Sarukkai, Sundar (2016), "Translation As Method: Implications for History of Science," in Bernard Lightman, Gordon McOuat, and Larry Stewart (eds.), *The Circulation of Knowledge Between Britain, India and China* (Leiden: BRILL), 309–29. doi: [10.1163/9789004251410\\_014](https://doi.org/10.1163/9789004251410_014).
- Sastri, Hrishikesh, and Gui, Siva Chandra (1895–1917), *A Descriptive Catalogue of Sanskrit Manuscripts in the Library of Calcutta Sanskrit College* (Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press).
- Sastri, P. P. S. (1933), *A Descriptive Catalogue of the Sanskrit Manuscripts in the Tanjore Maharaja Serfoji's Sarasvati Mahal Library Tanjore: Natya, Sangita, Kamasastra, Vaidya & Jyotisa*, nos. 10650–11737 (Srirangam: Sri Vani Vilas Press), [ark:/13960/t3nw8bc12](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t3nw8bc12).
- Śāstrī, Vardhamāna Pārśvanātha (1940) (ed.), *उग्रदित्याचार्यकृत कल्याणकारक (राष्ट्रभाषानुवादसहित) = The Kalyāṇa-kārikā of Ugrādityacharya, Edited with Introduction, Translation, Notes, Indexes and Dictionary* (Sakhārāma Nemacanda Gramthamālā, 129; Solāpura: Setha Govindajī Rāvajī Doṣī), [ark:/13960/t2q617g4d](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t2q617g4d).
- Scharfe, Hartmut (1993), *Investigations in Kauṭalya's Manual of Political Science* (2nd edn., Oxford: Harrassowitz), ISBN: 3447033304, [URL](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t2q617g4d); 2nd. rev. ed. of *Untersuchungen zur Staatsrechtslehre des Kauṭalya*.
- Schwartzberg, Joseph E., Bajpai, Shiva G., et al. (1978) (eds.), *A Historical Atlas of South Asia* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press), [URL](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t2q617g4d).

- Scott, H. (1817), "Some Remarks on the Arts of India, with Miscellaneous Observations on Various Subjects," *Journal of Science and the Arts*, 2: 67–72, ill. after 133, [ark:/13960/t9870jt4g](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t9870-jt4g); Breton 1826: 358–363 cites Scott's description of cataract couching.
- Selby, Martha Ann (2005a), "Narratives of Conception, Gestation, and Labour in Sanskrit Ayurvedic Texts," *Asian Medicine*, 1/2: 254–75, ISSN: 1573-420X. doi: [10.1163/15734210577996638](https://doi.org/10.1163/15734210577996638).
- (2005b), "Sanskrit Gynecologies in Postmodernity: The Commoditization of Indian Medicine in Alternative Medical and New-age Discourses on Women's Health," in *Asian Medicine and Globalization*, chap. 8, 120–31, [URL](#), accessed 22/03/2018.
- Semeka-Pankratov, Elena (1979), "A Semiotic Approach to the Polysemy of the Symbol *nāga* in Indian Mythology," in Irene Portis Winner and Jean Umiker-Sebeok (eds.), *Semiotics of Culture* (Approaches to Semiotics, 53; The Hague, Paris, NY: Mouton), 237–90. doi: [10.1515/9783110823134-009](https://doi.org/10.1515/9783110823134-009); The contents of this volume were published simultaneously in *Semiotica* (1/3) 1979.
- Sen, Sailendra Nath (1988), *Ancient Indian History and Civilization* (Delhi: New Age International), [ark:/13960/t8gf8pz34](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t8gf8pz34).
- Sena, Gaṅgāprasād, et al. (1886–93) (eds.), *सुश्रुतसंहिता...दल्लनाचार्य-कृत-निबन्ध-संग्रह, चक्रपाणिदत्त-कृत-भानुमती-टीका...वङ्गानुवाद...इरेजि प्रतिशब्द* (Calcutta: Maṇirāma Press); Edition "g" in [HIML](#): IB, 311.
- Sharma, Har Dutt (1939), *Descriptive Catalogue of the Government Collections of Manuscripts Deposited at the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, Vol. XVI, Part I, Vaidyaka* (Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts in the Government Manuscripts Library, XVI.I; Pune: Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute), [ark:/13960/t0ms6rc70](https://nbn-resolving.org/urn:nbn:de:hbz:5:1-3960-t0ms6rc70), accessed 23/10/2019.
- Sharma, Priya Vrat (1972), *Indian Medicine in the Classical Age* (Varanasi: Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series Office).
- (1975), *Āyurved Kā Vaijñānik Itihās* (Jayakṛṣṇadāsa Āyurveda Granthamālā; Vārāṇasī: Caukhambā Orientalia).
- (1982), *Ḍalhaṇa and his Comments on Drugs* (Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal).

- Sharma, Priya Vrat (1999–2001), *Suśruta-Saṃhitā, with English Translation of Text and Ḍalhana's Commentary Alongwith (sic) Critical Notes*, 3 vols. (Haridas Ayurveda Series, 9; Varanasi: Chaukhambha Visvabharati).
- Shastri, R. Shama (1920) (ed.), *बोधायनगृह्यसूत्रम् The Bodhāyana Grihyasutra* (Mysore: University of Mysore), [ark:/13960/t2t492622](https://n2t.org/13960/t2t492622).
- Shiffman, Melvin A. (2013), "History of Otoplasty: Review of Literature," in id. (ed.), *Advanced Cosmetic Otoplasty: Art, Science, and New Clinical Techniques* (Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer), chap. 5, 43–64. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-35431-1\\_5](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-35431-1_5).
- Siddiqi, Muhammad Zubayr (1959), *Studies in Arabic and Persian Medical Literature*, [ark:/13960/s25bxqt84xm](https://n2t.org/13960/s25bxqt84xm).
- Sieler, Roman (2015), *Lethal Spots, Vital Secrets. Medicine and Martial Arts in South India* (New York: Oxford University Press), ISBN: 9780190243869.
- Singh, A. (2003), "Tantra Yukti: Method of Theorization in Ayurveda," *Ancient Science Of Life*, 22/3: 64–74.
- Singhal, G. D., et al. (1972–82), *Diagnostic [and Other] Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery* (Varanasi: Singhal Publications); A translation of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* in 10v.
- Sircar, Dinesh Chandra (1971), *Studies in the Geography of Ancient and Medieval India* (2nd edn., Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass), [ark:/13960/t72w2zd8w](https://n2t.org/13960/t72w2zd8w).
- (1987), "6. Rākshaskhālī (Sundarban) Plate; Śaka 1118," *Epigraphia Indica* (1953–54), 30: 42–3, [ark:/13960/t80m25q3w](https://n2t.org/13960/t80m25q3w).
- Śiromaṇi, Bharatacandra (1873) (ed.), *चतुर्वर्गचिन्तामणि-दानखण्डम्* (Calcutta: Asiatic Society of Bengal), [ark:/13960/t1rf9jd94](https://n2t.org/13960/t1rf9jd94).
- Sleeman, W. H. (1893), *Rambles and Recollections of an Indian Official* (London: Constable), [ark:/13960/t22c4bx7w](https://n2t.org/13960/t22c4bx7w); v. 2 at <http://n2t.net/ark:/13960/t2s52bq7w>.
- Slouber, Michael (2016), *Early Tantric Medicine: Snakebite, Mantras, and Healing in the Garuda Tantras* (New York: OUP), 392 pp., ISBN: 9780190461812.
- Smith, Brian K. (1994), *Classifying the Universe: The Ancient Indian Varna System and the Origins of Caste* (New York, Oxford: Oxford University Press), ISBN: 0-19-508498-5.

- Spencer, Walter George (1935–38), *Celsus: De Medicina. with an English Translation by W. G. Spencer*, 3 vols. (Loeb Classical Library, 292, 304, 336; Cambridge, MA; London: Harvard University Press; William Heinemann), [URL](#), accessed 02/06/2021.
- Speziale, Fabrizio (2019), “Rasāyana and Rasaśāstra in the Persian Medical Culture of South Asia,” *History of Science in South Asia*, 7: 1–41. doi: [10.18732/hssa.v7i0.40](#).
- Spink, M. S., and Lewis, G. L. (1973) (eds.), *Albucasis on Surgery and Instruments: A Definitive Edition of the Arabic Text with English Translation and Commentary* (London: Wellcome Institute of the History of Medicine), [ark:/13960/t95823n1k](#).
- Srikantha Murthy, K. R. (2000–02), *Illustrated Suśruta Saṃhitā: Text, English Translation, Notes, Appendices and Index* (Jaikrishnadas Ayurveda Series, 102; 1st edn., Varanasi: Chaukhambha Orientalia).
- Steingass, F. (1930), *A Comprehensive Persian-English Dictionary Including the Arabic Words and Phrases to Be Met with in Persian Literature* (London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner), [ark:/13960/s25bwz0337d](#); Reprint, Delhi: Oriental Reprint, 1973.
- Storey, C. A. (1971), *Persian Literature, a Bio-bibliographical Survey*. Vol. II.2: Medicine (London: Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland), [ark:/13960/t9v18bf68](#).
- Strauss, Bettina (1934), “Das Giftbuch des Šānāq: eine Literaturgeschichtliche Untersuchung,” *Quellen und Studien zur Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften und der Medizin*, 4/2: [89]–[152] followed by Arabic text, [ark:/13960/s2hb5j66s95](#).
- Suvedī, K. S., and Tivārī, N. (2000) (eds.), *सौश्रुतनिघण्टुः ग्रन्थादौ विस्तृतेन ग्रन्थ-वैशिष्ट्यप्रकाशकेनोपोद्धातेन अवसाने च द्रव्याणामनेकभाषानामावली-पर्यायसङ्ग्रहाभ्यां समलङ्कृतः सुश्रुतसंहितायां प्रयुक्तानामौषधद्रव्याणां पर्याय-गुणकर्मवर्णात्मकोऽपूर्वग्रन्थः* (Belajhundi, Dān: Mahendrasaṃskṛtaviśvavidyālayaḥ).
- Talwar, P. K., and Kacker, R. K. (1984), *Commercial Sea Fishes of India* (Calcutt: Zoological Survey of India), [ark:/13960/t5s841v5m](#).
- Tavernier, Jean-Baptiste (1684), *Collections of Travels through Turkey (sic), into Persia, and the East-Indies* (London: M. Pitt), [ark:/13960/t9g45vn74](#).

- TEI Consortium (2010), *TEI P5: Guidelines for Electronic Text Encoding and Interchange*, ed. C. M. Sperberg-McQueen et al. (Oxford, Providence, Charlottesville, Nancy: TEI Consortium), [URL](#).
- Thorburn, S. S. (1876), *Bannu; or Our Afghan Frontier* (London: Trübner & Co.), [ark:/13960/t39z96g7m](#); Reprinted Lahore: Niaz Ahmad, 1978.
- Tivārī, Premvatī (1990), *Āyurvedīya prasūti-tantra evaṃ strī-roga; pratham bhāga: Prasūti-tantra, dvitīya bhāga: Strī-roga* (Jayakṛṣṇadāsa Āyurvedīya Granthamālā, 41; Varanas: Caukhamba Orientalia).
- UNESCO (2013), "International Memory of the World Register *Susruta Samhita* (Nepal)," UNESCO, [URL](#), accessed 11/09/2019.
- Unicode Consortium (1991), "The Unicode Standard 15.0, Newa Range," [url: https://unicode.org/charts/PDF/U11400.pdf](https://unicode.org/charts/PDF/U11400.pdf).
- Unschuld, Paul Ulrich (1984), *Medicine in China: A History of Ideas* (Berkeley: University of California Press), ISBN: 0520050231.
- Valiathan, M. S. (2007), *The Legacy of Suśruta* (Hyderabad, Chennai, etc.: Orient Longman).
- Velankar, H. D. (1925–30), *Descriptive Catalogue of the Sanskr̥ta and Prākṛta Manuscripts in the Library of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society* (Bombay: Royal Asiatic Society, Bombay), [ark:/13960/t53g00h0n](#); Biswas #0115.
- Wall, Frank (1913), *The Poisonous Terrestrial Snakes of Our British Indian Dominions (Including Ceylon) and How to Recognize Them; With Symptoms of Snake Poisoning and Treatment* (3rd edn., Bombay: Bombay Natural History Society), [ark:/13960/t1zc8g94b](#).
- (1921), *Ophidia Taprobanica or the Snakes of Ceylon* (Colombo: Cottle, Government Printer), [ark:/13960/t39z9q93n](#).
- Whitney, William Dwight (1885), *The Roots, Verb-forms, and Primary Derivatives of the Sanskrit Language. A Supplement to his Sanskrit Grammar* (Leipzig: Breitkopf and Härtel), [ark:/13960/t3qv3p906](#).
- Wilson, H. H. (1823), "On the Medical and Surgical Sciences of the Hindus," *The Oriental Magazine and Calcutta Review*, 1: 207–12, 349–56, [URL](#).

- Woodcock, Martin W. (1980), *Collins Handguide to the Birds of the Indian Sub-continent, Including India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka and Nepal* (Collins), ISBN: 0-00-219712-X; Reprinted 1990.
- Wujastyk, Dagmar (2012), *Well-mannered Medicine: Medical Ethics and Etiquette in Classical Ayurveda* (New York: Oxford University Press). DOI: [10.1093/acprof:oso/9780199856268.001.0001](https://doi.org/10.1093/acprof:oso/9780199856268.001.0001).
- (2013a), “Perfect Medicine. Mercury in Sanskrit Medical Literature,” *Asian Medicine: Tradition & Modernity*, 8/1 (Sept.): 15–40, ISSN: 1573-4218. DOI: [10.1163/15734218-12341278](https://doi.org/10.1163/15734218-12341278).
- (2019), “Iron Tonics: Tracing the Development from Classical to Iatrochemical Formulations in Ayurveda,” *HIMALAYA: The Journal of the Association for Nepal and Himalayan Studies*, 39/1. DOI: [10.5281/zenodo.7746874](https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.7746874).
- Wujastyk, Dominik (1993), “Indian Medicine,” in W. F. Bynum and Roy Porter (eds.), *Companion Encyclopedia of the History of Medicine*, i (London: Routledge), chap. 33, 755–78, ISBN: 0-415-04771-4, [URL](#).
- (2002), “Cannabis in Traditional Indian Herbal Medicine,” in Ana Salema (ed.), *Āyurveda at the Crossroads of Care and Cure. Proceedings of the Indo-European Seminar on Ayurveda held at Arrábida, Portugal, in November 2001* (Lisbon: Centro de História de Além-Mar, Universidade Nova de Lisboa), 45–73, ISBN: 972-98672-5-9, [URL](#), accessed 27/05/2019.
- (2003a), “Black Plum Island,” in *2nd International Conference on Indian Studies. Proceedings* (Kraków: Jagiellonian University, Institute of Oriental Philology and Księgarnia Akademicka), 637–49.
- (2003b), *The Roots of Ayurveda: Selections from Sanskrit Medical Writings* (Penguin Classics; 3rd edn., London, New York, etc.: Penguin Group), ISBN: 0-140-44824-1.
- (2004), “Agni and Soma: A Universal Classification,” *Studia Asiatica: International Journal for Asian Studies*, IV–V, ed. Eugen Ciurtin: 347–70. DOI: [10.5281/zenodo.7742068](https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.7742068).
- (2013b), “New Manuscript Evidence for the Textual and Cultural History of Early Classical Indian Medicine,” in *Medical Texts and Manuscripts in Indian Cultural History*, ed. Dominik Wujastyk, Anthony Cerulli, and Karin Preisendanz (New Delhi: Manohar), 141–57, [URL](#).



- Wujastyk, Dominik, et al. (2020), "Suśrutasaṃhitā," PanditProject (6 Oct.), [URL](#), accessed 14/09/2022.
- Wujastyk, Dominik (2021a), "A New Translation of Carakasamhitā, Vimānasthāna, Chapter 1, Based on the Vienna Critical Edition," in Toke Lindegaard Knudsen, Jacob Schmidt-Madsen, and Sara Speyer (eds.), *Body and Cosmos. Studies in Early Indian Medical and Astral Sciences in Honor of Kenneth G. Zysk* (Leiden, Boston: Brill), chap. 6, 77–109. DOI: [10.1163/9789004438224\\_007](#).
- (2021b), "MS London BL H. T. Colebrooke 908," [URL](#), accessed 03/07/2021.
- (2021–), "Sushrutaproject: Version Control for Suśruta Text TEI Transcriptions: Suśruta Project Manuscript Transcriptions," University of Alberta, [URL](#), accessed 21/01/2023; archived at DOI: [10.5281/zenodo.6471655](#).
- Wujastyk, Dominik, et al. (2021–), "The Suśruta Project: The Textual and Cultural History of Medicine in South Asia Based on Newly-Discovered Manuscript Evidenc," ed. Dominik Wujastyk, Jason Birch, Andrey Klebanov, et al., [URL](#), accessed 21/01/2023.
- Wujastyk, Dominik (2022), "The Science of Medicine," in Gavin D. Flood (ed.), *The Wiley Blackwell Companion to Hinduism* (2nd edn., Hoboken, NJ: Wiley and Sons, Ltd.), chap. 23, 399–413, ISBN: 9781119144861. DOI: [10.1002/9781119144892.ch23](#).
- Wujastyk, Dominik, Birch, Jason, Klebanov, Andrey, et al. (2021–) (eds.), "New Digital Edition of the Suśrutasaṃhitā: The Suśruta Project at Sak-tumiva," University of Alberta, [URL](#).
- Wujastyk, Dominik, Birch, Jason, Klebanov, Andrey, et al. (2023), *On the Plastic Surgery of the Ears and Nose. The Nepalese Version of the Suśrutasaṃhitā* (Heidelberg: Heidelberg Asian Studies Publishing), ISBN: 978-3-948791-63-6. DOI: [10.11588/hasp.1203](#).
- Wujastyk, Dominik, Pollock, Sheldon, et al. (2008–), "SARIT: Search and Retrieval of Indic Texts," [URL](#), accessed 21/01/2023.
- Yagi, Toru (1994), "A Note on bhojya- and bhakṣya-," in Yasuke Ikari (ed.), *A Study of the Nīlamata. Aspects of Hinduism in Ancient Kashmir* (Kyoto: Kyoto Institute for Research in Humanities, Kyoto University).

- Yano, Michio (1986), "A Comparative Study of *Sūtrasthānas*: Caraka, Suśruta, and Vāgbhaṭa," in Teizo Ogawa (ed.), *History of Traditional Medicine: Proceedings of the 1st and 2nd International Symposia on the Comparative History of Medicine—East and West* (Osaka: Division of Medical History, the Taniguchi Foundation), 325–44.
- Zimmermann, Francis (1983), "Suśrutasamhita," review of G. D. Singhal et al. (1972–82), *Diagnostic [and Other] Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery* (Varanasi: Singhal Publications); A translation of the *Suśrutasamhitā* in 10v. In *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 57/2: 291–3, ISSN: 00075140, eprint: [44441590](#), URL.
- (1999), *The Jungle and the Aroma of Meats* (2nd edn., Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass), ISBN: 8120816188.
- Zysk, Kenneth G. (1984), "An Annotated Bibliography of Translations into Western Languages of Principle Sanskrit Medical Treatises," *Clio Medica*, 19/3–4: 281–91.
- (1985), *Religious Healing in the Veda: With Translations and Annotations of Medical Hymns from the Rgveda and the Atharvaveda and Renderings from the Corresponding Ritual Texts* (Transactions of the American Philosophical Society; Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society), ISBN: 0871697572.
- (1986), "The Evolution of Anatomical Knowledge in Ancient India with Special Reference to Cross-cultural Influences," *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 106: 687–705. DOI: [10.2307/603532](#).
- (2000), *Asceticism and Healing in Ancient India: Medicine in the Buddhist Monastery* (Indian Medical Tradition; 2nd edn., Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass); First published 1991. Reprint of 1998 edition.





# Materia Medica Reference Works

- ADPS      Sivarajan, V. V., and Balachandran, Indira (1994), *Ayurvedic Drugs and Their Plant Sources* (New Delhi, Bombay, Calcutta: Oxford & IBH Publishing).
- AVS      Warriar, P. K., Nambiar, V. P. K., and Ramankutty, C. (1994–96) (eds.), *Indian Medicinal Plants: A Compendium of 500 Species*. Vaidyaratnam P. S. Varier's Arya Vaidya Sala, Kottakal (Madras: Orient Longman).
- BIA      Prater, S. H. (1993), *The Book of Indian Animals* (3rd edn., Bombay, Delhi, etc.: Oxford University Press), [ark : / 13960 / t6356w32f](#); 4th impression of 3rd corrected 1980 edition.
- Chopra      Chopra, R. N., Nayar, S. L., and Chopra, I. C. (1956), *Glossary of Indian Medicinal Plants* (3rd reprint, 1992, New Delhi: Council of Scientific and Industrial Research); vol. 2: R. N. Chopra, I. C. Chopra, and Varma ([Chopra<sub>sup</sub>](#)).
- Chopra IDG      Chopra, R. N., Chopra, I. C., Handa, K. L., et al. (1958), *Chopra's Indigenous Drugs of India* (2nd edn., Calcutta: Dhur & Sons), [ark : / 13960 / t9673t140](#).
- Chopra<sub>sup</sub>      Chopra, R. N., Chopra, I. C., and Varma, B. S. (1969), *Supplement to Glossary of Indian Medicinal Plants* (Reprint 1986, New Delhi: National Institute of Science Communication), ISBN: 8185038872.
- CIPP      Pillay, V. V. (2010), "Common Indian Poisonous Plants," in D. A. Warrell, T. M. Cox, and J. D. Firth (eds.), *Oxford Textbook of Medicine* (5th edn., Oxford University Press), 1371–5. DOI: [10.1093/med/9780199204854.003.090302](#).

- Dutt Dutt, Uday Chand (1922), *The Materia Medica of the Hindus...with a Glossary of Indian Plants by George King. Revised Edition...by Binod Lall Sen and Ashutosh Sen and Pulin Krishna Sen* (Krishnadas Sanskrit Studies; 3rd edn., Calcutta: Madan Gopal Dass for the Adi-Ayurveda Machine Press), [ark:/13960/t59c7tg9z](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t59c7tg9z); Reprinted Varanasi: Chowkhamba Saraswatibhavan, 1980.
- Dymock Dymock, William, Warden, C. J. H., and Hooper, David (1890), *Pharmacographia Indica: A History of the Principal Drugs of Vegetable Origin Met with in British India* (London, Bombay, Calcutta: Kegan Paul), [URL](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t59c7tg9z), accessed 16/03/2023.
- GJM<sub>1</sub> Meulenbeld, Gerrit Jan (1974a), "Sanskrit Names of Plants and their Botanical Equivalents," in id., *The Mādhavanidāna and Its Chief Commentary: Chapters 1–10. Introduction, Translation, and Notes* (Leiden: Brill), chap. Appendix Four, 520–611, [ark:/13960/t25b8q97g](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t25b8q97g).
- GJM<sub>2</sub> Meulenbeld, Gerrit Jan (1988), "G. J. Meulenbeld's Additions to his "Sanskrit Names of Plants and their Botanical Equivalents"," in Rahul Peter Das, *Das Wissen von der Lebensspanne der Bäume: Surapālas Vṛkṣāyurveda* (Stuttgart: Franz Steiner Verlag), chap. Appendix 1, 425–65, ISBN: 9783515046633; Supplement to [GJM<sub>1</sub>](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/t25b8q97g).
- GVDB Singh, Thakur Balwant, and Chuneekar, K. C. (1972), *Glossary of Vegetable Drugs in Brhatrayi* (Varanasi: Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series Office), [ark:/13960/s2cvp72x58j](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/s2cvp72x58j).
- IGP Griffiths, Mark (1994), *The New Horticultural Society Index of Garden Plants* (London: Macmillan).
- Issar Issar, T. P. (1994), *Blossoms of Bangalore* (Bangalore: T. P. Issar).
- IW Israel, Samuel, et al. (1988), *Indian Wildlife: Sri Lanka Nepal* (Insight Guides; Singapore etc.: APA Publications), ISBN: 9780245545238, [ark:/13960/s2p9d5pqd1w](https://nopr.scribd.org/handle/123456789/13960/s2p9d5pqd1w).

- K&B Kirtikar, K. R., Basu, B. D., and an I.C.S (1987), *Indian Medicinal Plants*, ed. E. Blatter, J. F. Caius, and K. S. Mhaskar, 8 vols. (2nd edn., Dehradun: International Book Distributors); First published in Allahabad, 1918.
- NK Nadkarni, K. M. (1982), *Dr. K. M. Nadkarni's Indian Materia Medica, with Ayurvedic, Unani-tibbi, Siddha, Allopathic, Homeopathic, Naturopathic & Home Remedies, Appendices & Indexes ... in Two Volumes*, ed. A. K. Nadkarni, 2 vols. (3 ed., revised and enlarged by A. K. Nadkarni, Bombay: Popular Prakashan), ISBN: 8171541429, [URL](#); First published in 1954.
- Potter Wren, R. C. (1956), *Potter's New Cyclopaedia of Botanical Drugs and Preparations*, ed. R. W. Wren (7th edn., Rustington, Sussex: Health Science Press), [ark : / 13960 / t14n65c9g](#).
- Potter<sub>rev</sub> Wren, R. C., Williamson, Elizabeth M., and Evans, Fred J. (1994), *Potter's New Cyclopaedia of Botanical Drugs and Preparations* (Saffron Walden: C. W. Daniel Company Ltd.); Reprint of revised 1988 edition.
- Reptiles Daniel, J. C. (1983), *The Book of Indian Reptiles* (Bombay: Oxford University Press).
- Trees Bole, P. V., and Vaghani, Yogini (1986), *Field Guide to the Common Trees of India* (Bombay, Delhi, Oxford, etc.: World Wildlife Fund – India and Oxford University Press), ISBN: 0-19-561595-6; 4th reprint.
- Watt<sub>Comm</sub> Watt, George (1908), *The Commercial Products of India, Being an Abridgement of "the Dictionary of the Economic Products of India"* (London: John Murray), [ark : / 13960 / t8cg7dm79](#).
- Watt<sub>Dict</sub> Watt, George (1889–96), *A Dictionary of the Economic Products of India* (Calcutta: Dept. Revenue and Agriculture, Government of India), [URL](#), accessed 28/04/2021.



# Materia Medica

Numbers after the final colon refer to pages in this book.

- aconite leaf (?) (*viṣapatrikā*) Unknown.  
Cf. perhaps, *vatsanābha* (wolfsbane).  
Cf. *GVDB*: 373 : 91
- amaranth (*taṇḍulīyaka*) *Amaranthus hypochondriacus*, L. See King 321, *NK*: 1, #144, *Potter*<sub>rev</sub>: 15. Cf. *AVS*: 1, 121 : 84
- arjun (*arjuna*) *Terminalia arjuna*, Bedd. See *HK*: 32
- axlewood (*dhava*) *Anogeissus latifolia* (Roxb. ex DC.) Wall. ex Guill & Perr. See *AVS*: 1, 163 f, *Chopra*: 20 : 32, 106
- bamboo leaves (*veṇupatrikā*) *Bambusa bambos*, Druce. See *NK*: 1, #307 : 84
- beautyberry (*priyaṅgu*) → *śyāmā*.  
*Callicarpa macrophylla*, Vahl. See *AVS*: 1, 334, *NK*: 1, #420. Some say also *Setaria italica* Beauv. *GVDB*: 263–264. See also *GVDB*: 413 : 32, 102, 107
- beautyberry (*śyāmā*) *Callicarpa macrophylla*, Vahl. See *AVS*: 1, 334, *NK*: 1, #420 : 70, 82, 84
- beggarweed (*aṃśumatī*) *Desmodium gangeticum* (L.) DC (*Dymock*: 1, 428, *GJM1*: 602, *NK*: 1, #1192; *ADPS*: 382, 414 and *AVS*: 2, 319, 4.366 are confusing) : 102
- beggarweed (*vidārigandhā*) → *śālapaṇṇī*.  
*Desmodium gangeticum* (L.) DC. See *Dymock*: 1, 428, *GJM1*: 602, cf. *NK*: 1, #1192; *ADPS*: 382, 414 and *AVS*: 2, 319, 4.366 are confusing : 41
- Bengal quince (*bilva*) *Aegle marmelos* (L.)  
Corr. See *AVS*: 1, 62, Chevallier 159, *NK*: 1, #62, (*MW*: 732a) : 66, 68, 72
- bitumen (*adrija*) → *śilājī*. A tar-like, black, resinous rock exudate. See *AyMahā*: 1, 21 : 116
- black creeper (*pālindī*) *Ichnocarpus frutescens*, (L.) R.Br. or *Cryptolepis buchanani*, Roemer & Schultes. See *AVS*: 3, 141, 145, 203, *NK*: 1, #1283, 1210, *ADPS*: 434. Ḍalhaṇa on SS 5.1.82 identified *pālindī* with *trivṛt* (turpeth) and T. B. Singh and Chuneekar (*GVDB*: 246) supported this as a usual identification : 84, 87, 101, 102
- blackboard tree (*saptachada*) *Alstonia scholaris* R. Br. *GVDB*: 420 : 83
- blackbuck (*hariṇa*) *Antelope cervicapra*, L. See *BIA*: 270 *IW*: 95, 165, *et passim* : 87
- blue water-lily (*utpala*) *Nymphaea stellata*, Willd. See *GJM1*: 528, *IGP* 790; *Dutt*: 110, *NK*: 1, #1726 : 23, 82, 101, 102
- bulrush (*kaṣeru*) "Two species, *Scirpus kysoor* Roxb., and *S. grossus* Linn. f. are used" *GVDB*: 85. Also *kaṣeruka* and *kaseru* : 70, 71
- cardamom (*elā*) *Elettaria cardamomum*, Maton. See *AVS*: 2, 360, *NK*: 1, #924, *Potter*<sub>rev</sub>: 66 : 66, 102, 107
- cassia cinnamon (*patra*) *Cinnamomum tamala*, (Buch.-Ham.) Nees. See *AVS*: 2, 84, *NK*: 1, #589 : 66, 84, 102

- castor oil tree (*gandharvahasta*) → *eraṇḍa*.  
GVDB: 135, K&B: 3, 2277 : 37, 68
- castor-oil (*eraṇḍa*) *Ricinus communis*, L.  
See NK: 1, #2145, Chopra: 214 : 42
- certain minerals (*tārāvitāra*) Unknown. It is not even certain that these are minerals. The variant reading in the vulgate, *tāraḥ sutāraḥ* was glossed by Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.14 (Su 1938: 568) as follows *tāro rūpyaṇi, sutāraḥ pāradah*, “*tāra* means silver; *sutāra* means mercury.” : 106
- chaff (*kāṇḍana*) The word *kāṇḍana* is not found in dictionaries; *kaṇḍana* is threshing, separating the chaff from the grain in a mortar. Cf. Hemādri’s *Caturvargacintāmaṇi* (PWK: 2, 8) (Śiromaṇi 1873: 1, 138: 21, citing the *Vāyupurāṇa*) : 24, 160
- chebulic myrobalan (*haritakī*) *Terminalia chebula* Retz. GVDB: 466 : 83
- cherry (*elavālu*) *Prunus cerasus*, L.?. See BVDB 58, NK: 1, #2037, GVDB: 58 : 102
- chital deer (*prṣata*) *Axis axis*, Erxleben.  
See BIA: 292, IW: 93 : 87
- citron (*mātuluṅga*) *Citrus medica*, Linn.  
GVDB: 276, 306. Also spelled *mātuliṅga, mātulaṅga, mātulāṅga* : 72
- cobra’s saffron (*nāgapuṣpa*) → *nāgakeśara*.  
*Mesua ferrea*, L. See NK: 1, #1595, GVDB: 220 : 102
- corky coral tree (*pāribhadra*) *Erythrina suberosa* Roxb. See GVDB 245 : 106
- costus (*kuṣṭha*) *Saussurea costus*, Clarke.  
See NK: 1, #2239 : 66, 72, 84, 102, 107
- cottony jujube (*kākolī*) *Ziziphus mauritana*, Lam. See IGP: 1233, NK: 1, #2663; IGP 1233. Cf. NK: 1, #1170 : 65, 71
- country mallow (*atibalā*) *Abutilon indicum*, (L.) Sweet, but may be other kinds of mallow, e.g., *Sida rhombifolia*, L.. See NK: 1, #11, IGP: 1080, NK: 1, #2300, ADPS: 71, 77 : 41, 71, 147
- country sarsaparilla (*anantā*) *Hemidesmus indicus*, (L.) R. Br. See ADPS: 434, AVS: 3, 141–5, NK: 1, #1210. But see GVDB: 13 for complications that may suggest that it is to be equated with *sārivā*, which may sometimes be *Cryptolepis* or *Ichnocarpus frutescens* R. Rr. (GVDB: 429–431) : 41, 91, 101, 102, 106
- crape jasmine (*nata*) → crape jasmine  
GVDB: 215 : 156, 157
- crape jasmine (*tagara*) *Tabernaemontana divaricata* (L.) R.Br. ex Roem. & Schultes. See GJM1: 557, AVS: 5, 232. Synonym of crape jasmine. But some say *Valeriana jatamansi*, Jones See GVDB: 173–174 for discussion (and charming comments on brain liquid testing). Some say *tagara* is Indian rose-bay or Indian valerian, but there remain many historical questions about the ancient and regional identities of this plant See, e.g., AVS: 5, 334 : 66, 72, 84, 102, 156, 157
- crimson trumpet-flower tree (*pāṭalā*) *Stereospermum chelonides*, (L. f.) A. DC. See GJM1: 573, AVS: 5, 192 ff, ADPS: 362 f, AVS: 3, 1848 f, IGP 1120, Dymock: 3, 20 ff : 106
- cuscut grass (*uśīra*) *Andropogon murcatus*, Retz. Also “vetiver grass.” See NK: 1, #180 : 84
- datura (*dhattūra*) *Datura metel*, L. See AVS: 2, 305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK: 1, #796 ff. Potter<sub>rev</sub>: 292 f, ADPS: 132 : 38
- deodar (*bhadradāru*) *Cedrus deodara*, (Roxb.ex D.Don) G. Don. See AVS 41, NK: 1, #516 : 32, 70, 102
- deodar (*devadāru*) *Cedrus deodara* (Roxb.) Loud. GVDB: 206–207 : 72, 147
- dried ginger (*śuṇṭhī*) *Zingiber officinale*, Roscoe. See ADPS: 50, NK: 1, #2658, AVS: 5, 435, IGP: 1232 : 70
- dried meat (*vallūra*) MW: 929, AyMahā: 1, 730. The term is used,

- rarely, in both the CS (1.5.10) and SS (1.13. 16, 6.42.75–76). It is a Dravidian loanword and occurs in the *Arthaśāstra* etc. (KEWA: 3, 167) : 23
- drum-giver (?) (*lambaradā*) Unknown; cf. GVDB: 348 : 91
- elixir salve (*rasāñjana*) → *añjana*. See Indian barberry : 32, 42
- embelia (*viḍaṅga*) *Embelia ribes*, Burm. f. See ADPS: 507, AVS: 2, 368, NK: 1, #929, Potter<sub>rev</sub>: 113 : 32, 66, 102
- emetic nut (*karaghāṭa*) Probably a synonym for *karahāṭa* (emetic nut), q.v., GVDB: 74 : 157
- emetic nut (*karahāṭa*) *Randia dumetorum*, Lamk. See GVDB: 291–292 and NK: 1, #2091. T. B. Singh and Chuneekar (GVDB: 74, 77–78) noted that it may be a synonym for *karaghāṭa*, emetic nut, and pointed rather to *Gardenia turgida* Roxb. on the basis of local knowledge in U. P. : 156, 158
- emetic nut (*madana*) *Randia dumetorum*, Lamk. See NK: 1, #2091 : 82, 149
- false daisy (*subhaṅgurā*) (*su*)bhaṅgura = bhr̥ṅga? *Eclipta prostrata* (L.) L. See GVDB: 288 : 90
- fermented rice-water (*dhānyāmla*) → *kāñjī*, *kāñjikā*, *sauvīra*. GVDB: 458, NK: 2, appendix VI, #18 : 39, 40
- fern (*ajaruhā*) *Nephrodium* species GVDB: 7, uncertain. Perhbaps *Christella dentata* (Forssk.) Brownsey & Jermy, which is reported to have folk applications against skin diseases in India : 86
- fire-flame bush (*dhātakī*) *Woodfordia fruticosa* (L.) Kurz. See AVS: 5, 412, NK: 1, #2626 : 83
- flax (*atasī*) *Linum usitatissimum*, L. See NK#1495 : 71
- fragrant lotus (*saugandhika*) A type of *kumuda* or *utpala* (GVDB: 457) : 23
- garjan oil tree (*aśvakarṇa*) *Dipterocarpus turbinatus* Gaertn. f. See GVDB: 28, Chopra: 100 : 106
- giant potato (*kṣīravidārī*) possibly → *kṣīraśukla*. *Ipomoea mauritiana*, Jacq. See ADPS: 510, AVS: 3, 222, AVS: 3, 1717 ff : 71, 158–160
- ginger (*mahauśadha*) *Zingiber officinale*, Roscoe. See ADPS: 50, NK: 1, #2658, IGP: 1232 : 87
- gold (*hema*) gold : 102
- gold and sarsaparilla (*surendragopa*) Unknown. Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.15 (Su 1938: 568) glossed *surendra* as “gold” and *gopā* as “Indian sarsaparilla.” He also noted other opinions that *surendra* was “Tellicherry bark” : 106
- golden shower tree (*rājadruma*) *rājadruma* = āragvadha. *Cassia fistula* L. See GVDB 37 : 106
- gourd (*alābu*) *Lagenaria siceraria* Standl. GVDB: 25. Some say *Lagenaria vulgaris*, Seringe (NK: 1, #1419) but this is not appropriate for blood-letting : 19, 20, 82
- green gram (*māṣa*) *Vigna radiata* (L.) R. Wilcz. See ADPS: 296, IGP 1204 : 32, 71, 148
- hare foot uraria (*prśniparṇī*) → *sahā*? *Uraria lagopoides*, DC. See GJM1: 577, Dymock: 1, 426, AVS: 1, 750 ff, NK: 1, #2542; ADPS: 382, AVS: 2, 319 and AVS: 4, 366 are confusing : 70, 71
- heart-leaf sida (*balā*) *Sida cordifolia*, Linn. See ADPS: 71, NK: 1, #2297 : 41, 71, 102, 147
- heart-leaved moonseed (*amṛtavalli*) See heart-leaved moonseed (*amṛtā*) : 147
- heart-leaved moonseed (*amṛtā*) → *gudūcī*. *Tinospora cordifolia*, (Willd.) Hook.f. & Thoms.? See ADPS: 38, NK: 1, #2472, 624, Dastur #229 : 84, 100, 157
- heart-leaved moonseed (*somavallī*) *Tinospora cordifolia* (Thunb.) Miers. GVDB: 456. Likely, but uncertain : 84
- henna (*madayantikā*) *Lawsonia inermis*, L.



- See [AVS](#): 3, 303, [NK](#): 1, #1448, [Potter<sub>rev</sub>](#): 151: 85
- Himalayan mayapple (*vakra*)  
Podophyllum emodi, Wall.  
([NK](#): #1971). But perhaps a synonym of [crape jasmine](#) and [crape jasmine](#) ([GVDB](#): 354) : 107
- Himalayan monkshood (*ativiṣā*) → *viṣā*  
Aconitum heterophyllum Wall.  
[GVDB](#): 12, [NK](#): 1, #39. Also “atis roots” : 63, 85, 87, 107
- Himalayan monkshood (*viṣā*) → *ativiṣā*  
[GVDB](#): 12, 373 : 160
- hogweed (*punarnavā*) Boerhaavia diffusa, L. See [ADPS](#): 387, [AVS](#): 1, 281, [NK](#): 1, #363 : 85, 101
- Holostemma creeper (*jīvantī*) → *sūryavallī*? Holostemma ada-kodien, Schultes. See [ADPS](#): 195, [AVS](#): 3, 167, 169, [NK](#): 1, #1242 : 159
- honey (*kṣaudra*) Eight varieties of honey are described in the SS ([NK](#): 2, Appendix 192). *Kṣaudra* is the product of a small bee of tawny colour, called *kṣudra* : 87
- horned pondweed (*śaivāla*) also *śaivāla*, *śevāra*. Zannichellia palustris L. The uncertainties of this identification are discussed by T. B. Singh and Chunekar ([GVDB](#): 409). Sometimes identified with [scutch grass](#) (*dūrvā*) ([GVDB](#): 409). Identified as Ceratophyllum demersum Linn. (“hornwort”) by [AVS](#): 2, 56–57x : 158, 160
- hornwort (*jalaśūka*) → *jalanīlikā*.  
Ceratophyllum demersum, L. See [AVS](#): 2, 56, [IGP](#): 232. T. B. Singh and Chunekar ([GVDB](#): 166) suggest [horned pondweed](#). *Ḍalhaṇa* noted on 1.16.19 ([Su 1938](#): 79) that some people interpret it as a poisonous, hairy, air-breathing, underwater creature : 41
- horseradish tree (*śigru*) Moringa oleifera Lam. See [IGP](#) 759, [GJM1](#): 603, [Dymock](#): 1, 396 : 72
- Indian barberry (*añjana*) → *rasāñjana*, *dāruharidrā*. Berberis aristata, DC.  
[Dymock](#): 1, 65, [NK](#): 1, #335, [GJM1](#): 562, [IGP](#): 141 : 42, 85, 156
- Indian barberry (*dāruharidrā*) Berberis aristata, DC. See [Dymock](#): 1, 65, [NK](#): 1, #685, [GJM1](#): 562, [IGP](#) 141 : 101, 102
- Indian barberry (*kālīyaka*) → *dāruharidrā*, *añjana*. Berberis aristata, DC. See [Dymock](#): 1, 65, [NK](#): 1, #685, [GJM1](#): 562, [IGP](#): 141 : 84
- Indian beech (*naktamāla*) Pongamia pinnata, (L.) Pierre. See [AVS](#): 4, 339, [NK](#): 1, #2003 : 32, 68
- Indian ipecac (*payasyā*) Uncertain. Possibly Tylophora indica (Burm.f.) Merr. Perhaps a synonym of [panacea twiner](#), [giant potato](#), [purple roscoe](#), and [plants like asthma plant and Gulf sandmat](#) ([GVDB](#): 237–238). Also “curds” when not a plant : 41, 159
- Indian kudzu (*vidārī*) → *payasyā*. Pueraria tuberosa (Willd.) DC. See [ADPS](#): 510, [AVS](#): 1, 792 f, [AVS](#): 4, 391; not [Dymock](#): 1, 424 f. See [GJM2](#): 444, 451, [AVS](#): 1, 187, but [AVS](#): 3, 1719 = *Ipomoea mauritiana*, Jacq : 41
- Indian madder (*mañjiṣṭhā*) Rubia cordifolia, L. See [IGP](#), [Chopra](#): 215, [GVDB](#): 289 : 37, 102
- Indian mottled eel (*varmimatsya*) Almost certainly the mottled eel. [MW](#): 962c noted that the *varmi* fish “is commonly called *vāmi*.” The “vam fish,” or “বান মাছ (*bān māch*)” in Bengal, is a marine and freshwater eel, *Anguilla bengalensis*. It is the most common eel in Indian inland waters and a prized food fish ([Froese and Pauly 2022](#)). However, some NIA languages identify the “vam” fish with the Indian Pike Conger, *Congresox talabonides* (Bleeker) (Talwar and Kacker 1984: 235, 236) : 21
- Indian mustard (*sarṣapa*) Brassica juncea, Czern. & Coss. See [AVS](#): 1, 301, [NK](#): 1,

- #378: 24  
 Indian sarsaparilla (*sārivā*) → *anantā*.  
*Hemidesmus indicus*, (L.) R. Br.  
 ADPS: 434, AVS: 3, 141–5, NK: 1, #1210;  
 and black creeper, *pālindī*. *Ichnocarpus*  
*frutescens*, (L.) R.Br. or *Cryptolepis*  
*buchanani*, Roemer & Schultes  
 AVS: 3, 141, 3.145, 3.203, NK: 1, #1283,  
 1210, ADPS: 434: 101, 102, 157  
 Indian snakeroot (*sarpagandhā*) *Rauvolfia*  
*serpentina*, (L.) Benth. ex Kurz. See  
 NK: 1, #2099, ADPS: 439, GVDB: 425;  
 cf. SS 5.5.76–78: 160  
 Indrajao (*vr̥kṣaka*) → *indrayava*, *indrabīja*,  
*kaliṅga*, and *kuṭaja*. *Holarrhena*  
*antidysenterica* Wall. GVDB: 376, 45  
 and 84: 147  
 jambul (*jambū*) *Syzygium cumini*, (L.)  
 Skeels. See ADPS: 188, NK: 1, #967,  
 Potter<sub>rev</sub>: 168, Wujastyk 2003a: 83  
 jasmine (*mālātī*) *Jasminium grandiflorum*,  
 L. See NK: 1, #1364: 84  
 jequirity (*guñjā*) *Abrus precatorius*, L. See  
 AVS: 1, 10, NK: 1, #6, Potter<sub>rev</sub>: 168:  
 90, 91  
 (?) (*karāṭā*) Not in GVDB. Cf. perhaps  
*karahāṭa* (emetic nut): 91  
 lac (*lākṣā*) *Kerria lacca* (Kerr.). See  
 GJM1: 445, NK: 2, #32. Watt  
 (Watt<sub>Comm</sub>: 1053–1066) is  
 characteristically informative, and is  
 definite about the antiquity of lac in  
 India: 107  
 leadwort (*citraka*) *Plumbago zeylanica* (or  
*indica*?), L. See RĀ. 6.124, ADPS: 119,  
 NK: 1, #1966, 1967: 32, 63, 68  
 liquorice (?) (*klītaka*) *Glycyrrhiza glabra*,  
 L.? GVDB: 123–124 discuss the many  
 difficulties in identifying this plant: 90  
 liquorice (*madhuka*) see *yaṣṭīmadhuka*: 41,  
 70, 71, 87, 100, 102  
 liquorice (*yaṣṭīmadhuka*) *Glycyrrhiza*  
*glabra*, L. AVS: 3, 84, NK: 1, #1136,  
 GVDB: 329 f.: 42  
 lodh tree (*lodhra*) *Symplocos racemosa*,  
 Roxb. See GJM1: 597, ADPS: 279 f,  
 NK: 1, #2420. T. B. Singh and  
 Chuneekar (GVDB: 351–352) notes that  
 there are two varieties, *S. racemosa*,  
 qualified as *śāvāra*, and *S. crataegoides*  
 Buch.-Ham. for *paṭṭikā lodhra*: 32, 102  
 long pepper (*māgadha*) *Piper longum*, L.  
 See NK: 1, #1928; but cf. AVS: 3, 245: 86  
 long pepper (*pippalī*) *Piper longum*, L. See  
 ADPS: 374, NK: 1, #1928: 68, 87,  
 102, 147  
 luffa (*koṣṭakī*) = *koṣṭakī*. *Luffa cylindrica*,  
 (L.) M. J. Roem. or *L. acutangula*, (L.)  
 Roxb. ADPS: 252–253, NK: 1, #1514 etc.  
 GVDB: 121: 82, 100, 159  
 luffa gourd (*koṣavatī*) = *koṣṭakī*, luffa: 100  
 maidenhair fern (*haṃsāhvayā*) *Adiantum*  
*lunulatum* Burm f. GVDB: 463: 147  
 mango (*āmra*) *Mangifera indica* Linn.  
 GVDB: 37: 83  
 marking-nut tree (*aruṣkara*) *Semecarpus*  
*anacardium* L. See *bhallātaka*  
 (marking-nut tree): 91  
 marking-nut tree (*bhallātaka*) *Semecarpus*  
*anacardium*, L. See NK: 1, #2269,  
 AVS: 5, 98: 68, 86, 159  
 medhshingi (*vijayā*2) *Dolichandrone*  
*falcata* (DC.) The *Sauśrutaniḥṣaṇṭu*  
 gives a number of synonyms for *vijayā*  
 (Suvedī and Tivārī 2000: 5.77, 10.143).  
 But one of them, *viṣāṇī* (also  
*meṣaśṛṅgī*), is sometimes equated with  
*Dolichandrone falcata* (DC.) Seemann  
 (ADPS: 518; GVDB: 373 f, a plant used  
 as an abortifacient and fish poison  
 (NK: #862): 91  
 migraine tree (*agnimantha*) *Premna*  
*corymbosa*, Rottl. See AVS 1927,  
 ADPS: 21, NK: 1, #2025, AVS: 4, 348;  
 GJM1: 523: = *P. integrifolia*/*serratifolia*,  
 L: 100  
 milk-white (*kṣīraśuklā*) An unidentified  
 plant. GVDB: 126: see purple *roscoea*  
 and giant potato: 41, 160  
 mongoose (*nakula*) *nakula*. Urva

- edwardsii or the often sympatric U. auropunctatus (small Indian mongoose, usually an eater of smaller creatures than snakes) (*BIA*: ch. 5), On mongooses and snakes, see *BIA*: 98–99; *IW*: 112 : 87
- monitor lizard (*godhā*) *Varanus bengalensis*, Schneider. See *Reptiles*: 58 : 41, 87
- mung beans (*mudga*) *Phaseolus radiatus* L. *GVDB*: 310–311 : 71, 128
- mung beans (*māṣaka*) *Phaseolus mungo* Linn. *GVDB*: 308 : 83
- myrobalan (*abhayā*) *Terminalia chebula*, Retz. See *ADPS*: 172, *NK*: 1, #2451, *Potter<sub>rev</sub>*: 214 : 63, 100, 107
- natron (*suvarcikā*) Sodium carbonate. *NK*: 2, #45. Ḍalhaṇa identifies *suvarcikā* with svarjikṣāra 4.8.50 (*Su 1938*: 441) : 102
- neem tree (*nimba*) *Azadirachta indica* A. Juss. *GVDB*: 226 : 37, 147
- nutgrass (*kuruvinda*) Unknown. Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.15 (*Su 1938*: 568) glossed the term as *nutgrass*, but noted other opinions that it was a whetstone or a very special metallic gem. T. B. Singh and Chunekar (*GVDB*: 108) added that it could be a variety of rice, *ṣaṣṭika dhānya* : 106
- nutgrass (*mustā*) *Cyperus rotundus*, L. See *ADPS*: 316, *AVS*: 2, 296, *NK*: 1, #782 : 159
- panacea twiner (*arkapuṣpī*) → *arkaparnī*, *Tylophora indica* (Burm. f.) Merr. *GVDB*: 23–24. Maybe identical to *Indian ipecac*, *giant potato* and similar sweet, milky plants. See *GVDB*: 24, 127, 238, 441, 443 for discussion. For discussion in the context of *Holostemma creeper*, see *ADPS*: 195 and *AVS*: 3, 171. The etymology of the name suggests *Helianthus annuus* Linn., but this plant is native to the Americas : 100, 158
- peas (*hareṇu*) *hareṇu* = *satīna*. *Pisum sativum*, L. T. B. Singh and Chunekar (*GVDB*: 419–420, 467–468) notes that two plants are usually meant under this name, but there is no agreement on the identity of the second : 72, 101, 102, 107
- peepul tree (*aśvattha*) *Ficus religiosa*, L. See *ADPS*: 63 : 109
- periploca of the woods (*meṣaśṛiga*) *Gymnema sylvestre* (Retz.) R. Br. See *AVS*: 3, 107, *NK*: 1, #1173 : 86
- plants like asthma plant and Gulf sandmat (*kṣīrīṇī*) various milky plants, perhaps including *Euphorbia hirta* Linn. (asthma plant) and *E. microphylla* Heyne (Gulf sandmat) (*GVDB*: 127) : 158
- plumed cockscomb (*indīvara*) Uncertain; possibly *Celosia argentea* Linn. But see the useful discussion in *GVDB*: 44–45. Possibly another name for *thorn apple* (*karambha*), q.v. : 161
- pointed gourd (*paṭola*) *Trichosanthes dioica*, Roxb. *GVDB*: 232–233 : 100
- poison berry (*bṛhatī*) *Solanum violaceum*, Ortega. See *ADPS*: 100, *NK*: 1, #2329, *AVS*: 5, 151 : 68, 101, 102
- poison-altar (?) (*viṣavedikā*) Unknown. Possibly, at a guess, *viṣamuṣṭika* (*strychnine tree*)? *GVDB*: 373 Or *viṣā* (*Himalayan monkshood*) : 91
- pondweed (*paripelavā*) Normally a neuter noun. T. B. Singh and Chunekar (*GVDB*: 238, 264–265, 409) argued that *plava* and *śaivāla* are the same thing, and may be either *Zannichellia palustris*, L., or *Potamogeton pectinatus*, L. : 102
- pondweed (*śevāla*) *Zannichellia palustris* L. See *horned pondweed* : 23
- prickly chaff-flower (*apāmārga*) *Achyranthes aspera*, L. See *GJM1*: 524 f, *AVS*: 1, 39, *ADPS*: 44 f, *AVS*: 3, 2066 f, *Dymock*: 3, 135 : 37, 41, 71
- purging nut (*mūṣikā*) *Jatropha curcas*, L. See *AVS*: 3, 261, *NK*: 1, #1374 : 86

- purple calotropis (*arka*) *Calotropis gigantea*, (L.) R. Br. See [ADPS](#): 52, [AVS](#): 1, 341, [NK](#): 1, #427, [Potter<sub>rev</sub>](#): 57, [Chopra IDG](#): 305–308: 32, 41, 68
- purple roscoea (*kṣīrakākoli*) [GVDB](#): 89  
notes that many physicians use *Roscoea procera* Wall. in this context. But the identification is uncertain. Possibly connected to [milk-white](#) or [giant potato](#): 71, 158, 159
- rajmahal hemp (*morāṭa*) → *mūrvī*, *Marsdenia tenacissima* (Roxb.) Wight et Arn. Good discussion at [GVDB](#): 314–316, 324: 100
- red chalk (*gairika*) *gairika*: 102
- red gourd (*bimbī*) *Coccinia indica*, W. & A. See [PVS](#) 1994.4.715; [NK](#): 1, #534: 82
- rice grains (*taṇḍula*) *Oriza sativa*, Linn. Same as [unhusked rice](#) (*śālī*) [GVDB](#): 174; or just “grains”: 24
- rice-grain chaff (*śālītaṇḍulakāṇḍana*) See [chaff](#): 24
- rock salt (*saindhava*) See [NK](#): 2, M#48, [Watt<sub>Comm</sub>](#): 963–971: 24
- rosha grass (*dhyāmaka*) *Cymbopogon martinii* (Roxb.) Wats. See [AVS](#): 2, 285, [NK](#): 1, #177: 102
- sacred grass (*kuśa*) *Desmostachya bipinnata*, Stapf. See [AVS](#): 2, 326, [Kew](#): 71
- sacred lotus (*padma*) *Nelumbo nucifera*, Gaertn. See [NK](#): 1, #1698: 23, 84
- sage-leaved alangium (*aṅkolla*) *Alangium salvifolium* (Linn. f.) Wang. [GVDB](#): 5–6: 83
- sandalwood (*candana*) *Santalum album*, L. See [ADPS](#): 111, [NK](#): 1, #2217: 102
- sappanwood (*pattāṅga*) Also *pattāṅga*. *Caesalpinia sappan*, L. [AVS](#): 1, 323, [K&B](#): 2, 847 f, [GVDB](#): 234: 42
- scarlet mallow (*bandhujīva*) *Pentapetes phoenicea*, L. [NK](#): #1836, [GVDB](#): 268: 85
- scented pavonia (*bālaka*) *Pavonia odorata*, Willd. See [ADPS](#): 498, [NK](#): 1, #1822: 102
- scutch grass (*dūrvā*) *Cynodon dactylon* (Linn.) Pers. ([GVDB](#): 205): 157
- selu plum (*śelu*) *Cordia myxa*, L. non Forssk. See [GJM1](#): 529 (2), [IGP](#): 291b, cf. [AVS](#): 3, 1677 f; cf. [AVS](#): 2, 180 (C. *dichotoma*, Forst.f.), [NK](#): 1, #672 (C. *latifolia*, Roxb.): 100
- sesame oil (*taila*) *Sesamum indicum* L. [GVDB](#): 183: 41
- siris (*śirīṣa*) *Albizia lebbek*, Benth. See [AVS](#): 1, 81, [NK](#): 1, #91: 100
- siris seeds (*śirīṣamāṣaka*) *Albizia lebbek*, Benth. See [AVS](#): 1, 81, [NK](#): 1, #91: 83
- small-flowered crape myrtle (*sidhraka*) *Lagerstroemia parviflora* Roxb. See [GVDB](#): 432: 106
- snakeroot (*sugandhā*) → *sarpagandhā* *Rauvolfia serpentina* Benth. ex. Kurz. See [Indian snakeroot](#). But may be *Aristolochia indica* Linn. Has been identified with ??, or ??. See ([GVDB](#): 219, 436): 90
- spikenard (*māṃsī*) *Nardostachys grandiflora*, DC. See [NK](#): 1, #1691: 102
- spikenard (*nalada*) → *māṃsī*. *Nardostachys grandiflora*, DC. See [NK](#): 1, #1691: 81
- strychnine tree (*viṣamuṣṭika*) *Strychnos nux vomica* Linn. [GVDB](#): 373: 160
- sugar (*śitā*) *Ḍalhaṇa* makes this equation at 1.37.25 ([Su](#) 1938: 162): 102
- sugar (*śarkara*) *Saccharum officinarum*, Linn. [NK](#): #2182: 87
- sugar cane (*ikṣu*) *Saccharum officinarum*, Linn. [NK](#): #2182: 87
- sunflower (*sūryavallī*) → *ādityavallī*, *sūryamukhī*, *Helianthus annuus* Linn. [GVDB](#): 35, 443: 100
- sweet plants (*madhuravarga*) The sweet plants are enumerated at *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 1.42.11. See also [GVDB](#): 127: 41
- sweet-scented oleander (*aśvamāraka*) *Nerium oleander*, L. See [ADPS](#): 223, [NK](#): 1, #1709: 90

- Tellicherry bark (*kuṭaja*) *Holarrhena pubescens* Wall. ex G.Don, with *Wrightia tinctoria* and *W. arborea* considered [GVDB](#): 101–102, [ADPS](#): 267–270 : 68, 157
- thorn apple (*karambha*) *Datura metel*, L. See [GVDB](#): 76 for useful discussion. Also, [AVS](#): 2, 305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), [NK](#): 1, #796 ff. [Potter<sub>rev</sub>](#): 292 f, [ADPS](#): 132. Possibly the same plant as [plumed cockscomb](#) (*indīvara*) ([GVDB](#): 76, 44–45) : 91, 160
- three heating spices (*tryūṣaṇa*) *śuṇṭhī* (Dried ginger) *Zingiber officinale*, Roscoe. [ADPS](#): 50, [NK](#): 1, #2658, [AVS](#): 5, 435, [IGP](#) 1232, *pippalī* (long pepper) *Piper longum*, L. [ADPS](#): 374, [NK](#): 1, #1928, and *marica* (black pepper) *Piper nigrum*, L. [ADPS](#): 294, [NK](#): 1, #1929 : 101
- three-leaved caper (*varuṇa*) *Crataeva magna* (Lour.) DC. See [AVS](#): 2, 202; cf. [NK](#): 1, #696 : 86
- top layer of fermented liquor (*surāmaṇḍa*) [K&B](#): 2, 502, [NK](#): 2, appendix VI, #49, [McHugh](#) 2021: 39 : 39, 40
- tree cotton (*kārpāsa*) *G. arboreum* L. [ADPS](#): 231. Pace the identifications of T. B. Singh and Chuneekar ([GVDB](#): 92, 247), since *G. barbadense* L. is native to South America and *G. herbaceum* L. which is native to Africa : 38, 161
- tree cotton (*picu*) See [tree cotton](#) (*kārpāsa*) : 40, 42
- turmeric (*haridrā*) *Curcuma longa* Linn. [GVDB](#): 465 : 101, 107
- turmeric (*rajanī*) *Curcuma longa*, L. [ADPS](#): 169, [AVS](#): 2, 259, [NK](#): 1, #750 : 24, 102
- turpeth (*trivṛt*) → *trvṛtā*. *Operculina turpethum* (Linn.) Silva Manso = *Ipomoea turpethum* R. Br. [GVDB](#): 197. : 66, 87, 149, 155
- unhusked rice (*śālī*) *Oriza sativa*, Linn. [GVDB](#): 395–396 : 24, 160
- velvet-leaf (*pāṭhā*) *Cissampelos pariera*, L. See [ADPS](#): 366, [NK](#): 1, #592, [GJM1](#): 573, [AVS](#): 1, 95; cf. [AVS](#): 2, 277 : 32, 63, 100
- velvet-mite (*indragopa*) *Kerria lacca* (Kerr.). Lienhard 1978 : 82
- verbena (*phañjī*) *Clerodendrum serratum*, L. See [AVS](#): 2, 121, [ADPS](#): 87 : 85
- watered buttermilk (*udaśvit*) [MW](#): 183 : 82
- weaver's beam tree (*muṣkaka*) *Schrebera swietenoides*, Roxb. See [AVS](#): 5, 88, Lord, [NK](#): 1, #2246 : 68, 106
- white babool (*arimeda*) *Acacia leucophloea*, (Roxb.) Willd. See [AVS](#): 1, 23 : 32
- white calotropis (*alarka*) *Calotropis procera*, (Ait.) R. Br. See [NK](#): 1, #428, [Chopra](#): 46b, [Chopra IDG](#): 305–308 : 41
- white clitoria (*śvetā*) → *giryāhvā*. *Clitoria ternatea*, L. See [AVS](#): 2, 129, [NK](#): 1, #621 : 84
- white cutch tree (*somavalka*) *Acacia polyacantha*, Willd. See [AVS](#): 1, 30, [IGP](#) 7, [GJM1](#): 602, [AVS](#): 2, 935; *pace* [NK](#): 1, #1038 : 85, 106
- white dammer tree (*sarja*) *Vateria indica*, L. See [NK](#): 1, #2571, [AVS](#): 5, 349 f, [AVS](#): 1, 292 f, [Chopra](#): 253a : 32
- white siris (*kiṇihī*) *Albizia procera*, (Roxb.) Benth. See [GVDB](#) 98, [NK](#): 1, #93 : 101
- white water-lily (*kumuda*) *Nymphaea alba*, Linn. [GVDB](#): 105 : 23
- wild asparagus (*bahuputrā*) → *nandana*? *Asparagus racemosus*, Willd. See further [wild asparagus](#) (*śatāvarī*) : 85
- wild asparagus (*śatāvarī*) *Asparagus racemosus*, Willd. See [ADPS](#): 441, [AVS](#): 1, 218, [NK](#): 1, #264, [IGP](#): 103, [AVS](#): 4, 249 ff, [Dymock](#): 3, 482 ff : 70, 71, 128, 161
- wild celery (*agnika*) → may be *bhalātaka*, *lāṅgalī*, *ajamodā*, *moraṭa*, or *agnimantha*, [GVDB](#): 4. Uncertain : 100
- wild celery (*ajamodā*) *Apium graveolens*, L. : 100

- Withania (*aśvagandhā*) Withania  
 somnifera (L.) Dunal. See [AVS](#): 5,  
 409 f, [Dymock](#): 2, 566 f., Chevallier  
 150 : [41](#), [67](#)
- wolfsbane (*vatsanābha*) Aconitum  
 napellus, L. See [AVS](#): 1, 47, [NK](#): 1, #42,  
[Potter<sub>rev</sub>](#): 4 f. Or Aconitum  
 chasmanthum Stapf ex Holmes,  
[GVDB](#): 357 : [155](#)
- wood apple (*kapittha*) Limonia acidissima,  
 L. See [AVS](#): 3, 327, [NK](#): 1, #1021 : [84](#), [86](#)
- woodrose (*mūṣikakarṇī*) Jatopha curcas, L.  
[AVS](#): 3, 261, [NK](#): 1, #1374. [GVDB](#): 317;  
[ADPS](#): 23–25 discuss this issue well : [84](#)
- yellow-berried nightshade (*kṣudrā*)  
 Solanum virginianum, L. See  
[ADPS](#): 100, [NK](#): 1, #2329, [AVS](#): 5, 164 :  
[101](#), [102](#)





## Glossary

*ācāra* (regimen): 13  
 accumulation (*sañcaya*): 14  
*adhiṣṭhāna* (located): 13  
*adhyāya* (sections): 16  
*āgantū* (external factors): 15  
*āhāra* (diet): 13  
*ahorātra* (day and night): 14  
*ajeya* (invincible): 95  
*alagarddā* (sting-gush): 23  
*ālepana* (liniments): 23  
 alleviation (*pratīkāra*): 14  
 along these lines (*evam*): 15  
*amṛta* (immortal): 95  
*aṇḍaja* (born from eggs): 14  
*aṅga* (parts): 15  
 anger (*krodha*): 13  
 animals (*paśu*): 14  
 ants (*pipīlika*): 14  
*āśoka* (grief): 13  
*āśrayin* (substrate): 13  
*asthi* (bones): 15  
*asūyā* (jealousy): 13  
*ātmaka* (nature): 12  
*ayana* (half-year): 14  
*āyatta* (depends on): 13  
*āyur* (life, longevity): 9  
*āyur* (life): 22  
*āyurveda* (the science of life): 10

*bala* (strength): 13  
*bāṣpa* (vapour): 89  
*bhramaraka* (drongo): 89  
*bhr̥ṅgarāja* (racket-tailed drongo): 89  
 black (*kṛṣṇā*): 23  
 black drongo (*dhūmyāṭa*): 89  
 blink of the eye (*nimeṣa*): 14  
 blood (*rudhira*): 14  
 bones (*asthi*): 15  
 born from eggs (*aṇḍaja*): 14  
 born in in a caul (*jarāyujā*): 14  
 born of sweat (*sveda*): 14  
*bṛmhaṇa* (nourishment): 13  
 bulbs (*kanda*): 14  
 bull (*vṛṣabha*): 89

*carman* (pelt): 14  
*cāsyāt* (from his mouth): 90  
*caturvarga* (fourfold grouping): 15  
*catuṣṭaya* (four factors): 15  
*chedya* (excision): 15  
*chinna* (segmented): 23  
 chital deer (*pr̥ṣata*): 89  
 clusters (*samplava*): 14  
 collection (*varga*): 15  
 comfort (*sukha*): 15  
 complexion (*varṇa*): 13  
 congested humours (*sannipāta*): 15  
 cow-praising (*govandanā*): 23  
 creepy-crawlies (*sarīṣpa*): 11, 14

*dainya* (misery): 13  
*dantamāṃsa* (gum): 91  
*dantaveṣṭa* (tooth socket): 91  
 dart-mouth (*śaṅkumukhī*): 24  
*datta* (given): 89  
 day and night (*ahorātra*): 14  
 depends on (*āyatta*): 13  
 depression (*viṣāda*): 13  
 desire (*icchā*): 13  
*dhātu* (element): 98  
*dhūmyāṭa* (black drongo): 89  
 diet (*āhāra*): 13  
 disease (*vyadhi*): 15  
*doṣa* (humours): 14  
 drongo (*bhramaraka*): 89  
 ducts (*sirā*): 15  
*duḥkha* (suffering): 13  
*dveṣa* (hatred): 13

earth products (*pārthiva*): 14  
 earthen products (*pārthiva*): 15  
 element (*dhātu*): 98  
 envy (*īṛṣyā*): 13  
 essence (*sāra*): 14  
*evam* (along these lines): 15  
 excision (*chedya*): 15  
 extensive meaning of the literature  
 (*vāksamūhārthavistāra*): 127  
 external factors (*āgantū*): 15



- flavours (*rasa*): 13  
 flesh (*māṃsa*): 15  
 flowering trees (*vrkṣa*): 13  
 flowers (*puṣpa*): 14  
 fortnight (*pakṣa*): 14  
 four factors (*caturstaya*): 15  
 fourfold grouping (*caturvarga*): 15  
 frogs (*maṇḍūkā*): 14  
 from his mouth (*cāsyāt*): 90  
 fruit trees (*vanaspati*): 13  
 fruits (*phala*): 14  
  
 given (*datta*): 89  
 govandanā (cow-praising): 23  
 great antidote (*mahāgada*): 23  
 greed (*lobha*): 13  
 grief (*āśoka*): 13  
 gum (*dantamāṃsa*): 91  
  
 half-year (*ayana*): 14  
 harṣa (overexcitement): 13  
 hatred (*dveṣa*): 13  
 herbs (*oṣadhi*): 13  
 human being (*puruṣa*): 12f, 15  
 humours (*doṣa*): 14  
  
 icchā (desire): 13  
 immortal (*amṛta*): 95  
 in yama's direction (*yāmya*): 117  
 indragopa (red velvet mites): 14  
 indrāyudhā (rainbow): 23  
 inherent (*svābhāvika*): 13  
 inherent factors (*svabhāva*): 15  
 intended (*vyākhyāta*): 15  
 invincible (*ajeya*): 95  
 irregularities (*vaiṣamya*): 13  
 irritation (*prakopa*): 14  
 īrṣyā (envy): 13  
 items created by time (*kālakṛta*): 14f  
  
 jala (water): 22  
 jalaukas (water-dwellers): 22  
 jaṅgama (moving): 13, 15  
 jarāyuja (born in in a caul): 14  
 jealousy (*asūyā*): 13  
 joints (*sandhi*): 15  
  
 juice extract (*svarasa*): 14  
  
 kalā (minutes): 14  
 kālakṛta (items created by time): 14f  
 kāma (lust): 13  
 kanda (bulbs): 14  
 kapilā (tawny): 23  
 kapittha (wood apple): 132  
 karburā (mottled): 23  
 karman (therapies): 15  
 kāṣṭhā (trice): 14  
 knowledge (*veda*): 9  
 kriyā (treatment): 15  
 kriyā (procedures): 12, 15  
 kriyākāla (the time for therapies): 15  
 kṛmi (worms): 14  
 krodha (anger): 13  
 kṛṣṇā (black): 23  
 kṣīra (sap): 14  
 kunta (small insects): 14  
  
 leaves (*patra*): 14  
 lekhaṇa (scarification): 13  
 life (*āyur*): 22  
 life, longevity (*āyur*): 9  
 liniments (*ālepana*): 23  
 lobha (greed): 13  
 located (*adhiṣṭhāna*): 13  
 lotus-mouth (*puṇḍarikamukhī*): 24  
 lust (*kāma*): 13  
 lūtā (spiders): 11  
  
 mahāgada (great antidote): 23  
 malice (*mātsarya*): 13  
 māṃsa (flesh): 15  
 mānasa (mental): 13  
 maṇḍūkā (frogs): 14  
 marks with a knife (*śāstrapada*): 26  
 māsa (month): 14  
 mātsarya (malice): 13  
 mental (*mānasa*): 13  
 minutes (*kalā*): 14  
 misery (*dainya*): 13  
 mithuna (pair): 162  
 mithuna (triad): 162  
 month (*māsa*): 14

mottled (*karburā*): 23  
 mouse (*mūṣikā*): 24  
 moving (*jaṅgama*): 13, 15  
*muhūrta* (three-quarters of an hour): 14  
*mūla* (roots): 14  
*mūla* (root): 13  
*mūṣika* (rodents): 11  
*mūṣikā* (mouse): 24

nature (*ātmaka*): 12  
*nimeṣa* (blink of the eye): 14  
*niryāsa* (resin): 14  
*nivāta* (no wind): 14  
 no wind (*nivāta*): 14  
 nourishment (*br̥ṇhaṇa*): 13

oceanic (*sāmudrikā*): 23  
 oil (*sneha*): 14  
*ojas* (vital energy): 13  
*oṣadhi* (herbs): 13  
*oṣadhi* (remedies): 15  
*oṣadhī-* (remedies): 13  
 overexcitement (*harṣa*): 13

pacification (*saṃśamana*): 13  
 pacification (*upaśama*): 14  
 pain and injury (*vedanābhighāta*): 10  
 pair (*mithuna*): 162  
*pakṣa* (fortnight): 14  
*pārthiva* (earthen products): 15  
*pārthiva* (earth products): 14  
 particulars (*vikalpa*): 15  
 parts (*aṅga*): 15  
*paśu* (animals): 14  
*patra* (leaves): 14  
 pelt (*carman*): 14  
 person (*puruṣa*): 162  
*phala* (fruits): 14  
 physical (*śārīravād*): 15  
*piṅgalā* (ruddy): 23  
*pipīlika* (ants): 14  
 practical purposes (*prayojanavat*): 14  
*prakopa* (irritation): 14  
*prakṛti* (temperament): 13  
*pratīkāra* (alleviation): 14  
*prayojanavat* (practical purposes): 14

procedures (*kriyā*): 12, 15  
*pr̥ṣata* (chital deer): 89  
*puṇḍarikamukhī* (lotus-mouth): 24  
 purification (*saṃśodhana*): 13  
*puruṣa* (human being): 12f, 15  
*puruṣa* (person): 162  
*puṣpa* (flowers): 14

racket-tailed drongo (*bhṛṅgarāja*): 89  
 rainbow (*indrāyudhā*): 23  
 rainy seasons (*varṣā*): 14  
*rasa* (flavours): 13  
 red velvet mites (*indragopa*): 14  
 regimen (*ācāra*): 13  
 remedies (*oṣadhi*): 15  
 remedies (*oṣadhī-*): 13  
 resin (*niryāsa*): 14  
 rodents (*mūṣika*): 11  
 root (*mūla*): 13  
 roots (*mūla*): 14  
*ṛtu* (season): 14  
 ruddy (*piṅgalā*): 23  
*rudhira* (blood): 14

*samplava* (clusters): 14  
*saṃśamana* (pacification): 13  
*saṃśodhana* (purification): 13  
*sāmudrikā* (oceanic): 23  
*saṃvatsara* (year): 14  
*sañcaya* (accumulation): 14  
*sandhi* (joints): 15  
*śaṅkumukhī* (dart-mouth): 24  
*sannipāta* (congested humours): 15  
 sap (*kṣīra*): 14  
*sāra* (essence): 14  
*śārīravād* (physical): 15  
*sarīsr̥pa* (creepy-crawlies): 11, 14  
*śastrapada* (marks with a knife): 26  
*sāvarikā* (*sāvarikā*): 24  
*sāvarikā* (*sāvarikā*): 24  
 scarification (*lekhaṇa*): 13  
 season (*ṛtu*): 14  
 sections (*adhyāya*): 16  
 segmented (*chinna*): 23  
 shoots (*udbhīd*): 14  
 shrubs (*vīrudh*): 13

- sinews (*snāyu*): 15  
 sirā (ducts): 15  
 skin (*tvak*): 14f  
 small insects (*kunta*): 14  
 snāyu (sinews): 15  
 sneha (oil): 14  
 sole-heart (*talahr̥daya*): 162  
 soma creeper (*somalatā*): 90  
 somalatā (soma creeper): 90  
 spiders (*lūtā*): 11  
 śreyas (welfare): 10  
 stationary (*sthāvara*): 13, 15  
 sthāvara (stationary): 13, 15  
 sting-gush (*alagarddā*): 23  
 strength (*bala*): 13  
 substrate (*āśrayin*): 13  
 suffering (*duḥkha*): 13  
 sukha (comfort): 15  
 svabhāva (inherent factors): 15  
 svābhāvika (inherent): 13  
 svarasa (juice extract): 14  
 svedaja (born of sweat): 14  
  
 talahr̥daya (sole-heart): 162  
 tawny (*kapilā*): 23  
 temperament (*prakṛti*): 13  
 the science of life (*āyurveda*): 10  
 the time for therapies (*kriyākāla*): 15  
 therapies (*karman*): 15  
 three-quarters of an hour (*muḥūrta*): 14  
 tooth socket (*dantaveṣṭa*): 91  
 treatment (*kriyā*): 15  
 triad (*mithuna*): 162  
 trice (*kāṣṭhā*): 14  
 tvak (skin): 14f  
  
 udbhid (shoots): 14  
 upāsama (pacification): 14  
  
 vaiṣamya (irregularities): 13  
 vāksamūhārthavistāra (extensive meaning  
 of the literature): 127  
 vanaspati (fruit trees): 13  
 vapour (*bāṣpa*): 89  
 varga (collection): 15  
 varṇa (complexion): 13  
 varṣā (rainy seasons): 14  
 veda (knowledge): 9  
 vedanābhighāta (pain and injury): 10  
 vikalpa (particulars): 15  
 vīrudh (shrubs): 13  
 viśāda (depression): 13  
 vital energy (*ojas*): 13  
 vṛkṣa (flowering trees): 13  
 vṛṣabha (bull): 89  
 vyadhi (disease): 15  
 vyākhyāta (intended): 15  
 vyāla (wild animals): 14  
  
 water (*jala*): 22  
 water-dwellers (*jalaaukas*): 22  
 welfare (*śreyas*): 10  
 wild animals (*vyāla*): 14  
 wood apple (*kapittha*): 132  
 worms (*kṛmi*): 14  
  
 yāmya (in yama's direction): 117  
 year (*saṃvatsara*): 14  
 yuga (*yuga*): 14  
 yuga (yuga): 14

# Todo list

■ Can't be "sedation" . . . . .	35
■ This is a change we should make in the edition. . . . .	65
■ You need not give all the grammatical details about śrotādi. Assume you are talking to knowledgeable Sanskrit scholars. . . . .	66
■ Perhaps <i>kalka</i> here could also mean the <i>Terminalia Bellerica</i> (विभीतक). . . . .	68
■ Euphorbia Antiquorum (Antique spurge) . . . . .	70
■ The webpage <a href="https://hindi.shabd.in/vairagya-shatakam-bhagacharya-arjun-tiwari/post/117629">https://hindi.shabd.in/vairagya-shatakam-bhagacharya-arjun-tiwari/post/117629</a> says that this verse belongs to the <i>Nītiratna</i> . I could not find this text. . . . .	73
■ The provisional edition should be modified accordingly. . . . .	75
■ There, Ḍalhaṇa comments that deliberation on <i>avapīḍa</i> had been done earlier when it was mentioned. Find that description to know more details. . . . .	77
■ ? . . . . .	80
■ ? . . . . .	80
■ ? . . . . .	80
■ (?) . . . . .	80
■ Cf. Arthaśāstra 1.21.8. . . . .	88
■ I'm still unhappy about this verse. . . . .	91
■ Mention this in the introduction as an example of the scribe knowing the vulgate. . . . .	91
■ fn about sadyas+ . . . . .	91
■ Bear's bile instead of deer's bile. . . . .	92
■ punarṇṇavā in the N & K MSS . . . . .	93
■ śrita for śṛta . . . . .	93
■ explain more . . . . .	93
■ Medical difference from Sharma. . . . .	94

example where the vulgate clarifies that these should be used separately; appears to be a gloss inserted into the vulgate text. . . .	94
The two uses of prāpta are hard to translate. prāptāḥ → kṣipram is an example of the vulgate banalizing the Sanskrit text to make sense of a difficult passage. . . . .	94
✓ vyadh not ✓ vedh (also elsewhere and for the ears), causative optative. . . . .	94
-> ativiṣa . . . . .	104
Look up the ca. reference. . . . .	104
Come back to the issue of "kalpa". Look up passages in the Kośa. . . . .	111
write footnote: don't repeat ativiṣā; vulgate similar to H. . . . .	115
material corresponds to SS.1.45.205ab, where it describes how alcohol affects the body. . . . .	117
Or "There are 20 phaṇins and 6 maṇḍalins. The same number are known. There are 13 Rājīmats." Or even, "there are 20 Phaṇins and six of them are Maṇḍalins." Are phaṇins really the same as darvīkaras? . . . . .	121
grammar . . . . .	123
ri- ṛ-? . . . . .	125
varṇa means "colour" elsewhere? . . . . .	126
? . . . . .	127
where is cutting with a knife related to removing bile or phlegm. . . . .	132
maṣī burned charcoal. Find refs. . . . .	132
find ref. . . . .	137
Check out these refs. . . . .	138
meaning of kalpa . . . . .	138
or a dual? . . . . .	143
Footnote here about who is speaking to whom. . . . .	143
a kind of asthma? . . . . .	149
Not happy with the last part. . . . .	149
connecting with the previous pāda? . . . . .	149
(atyartha? excessive?) . . . . .	150
for...dvādaśādhikāḥ? not clear to me, is it dvādaśādhikāḥ? . . . . .	150
(any better medical terms for them?) . . . . .	150
(since the word lagha is not clear to me) . . . . .	151
(Not too happy with it.) . . . . .	151
(not sure about it) . . . . .	151
(Not in vulgate) . . . . .	151

■ (I am looking for a better translation) . . . . .	151
■ (I'd need to rework on it). . . . .	152
■ (I'd need to rework on it and think about the sequencing of the number). . . . .	152
■ (āmadoṣa? Not too sure) . . . . .	152
■ (2nd hemistich is incomplete) . . . . .	152
■ (not too sure about the meaning of vyapada) . . . . .	152
■ not so sure about sodāvarte . . . . .	152
■ not so sure about it, MW mentions others like Cordia Myxa and Alangium hexapetalum . . . . .	153
■ not sure about it . . . . .	153
■ (sāmāhāya- any better word?) . . . . .	153
■ Not so happy with this translation . . . . .	154
■ ( Not happy with it) . . . . .	155
■ (the second hemistich is incomplete) . . . . .	155
■ can śṛta mean here boiled milk? Not happy with the last part . . .	155
■ the rest of the text is unclear to me . . . . .	155
■ (not so sure about it). [ ghṛtābhyaṅgonavasthāsu should it be like ghṛtābhyaṅgo 'navasthāsu?, svedā lepaḥ ghṛtābhyaṅgonavas- thāsu ca yojayet] (Not so happy with the translation) . . . . .	156
■ See also Ḍalhaṇa at 1.1.1 (Su 1938: 1) . . . . .	160
■ See chapter 40 of Sūtrasthāna. . . . .	161
■ vasā / medas / majjan . . . . .	161
■ Does bhūtādi a compound or it means ahaṅkāra or ego? . . . . .	162

